# OKI

# C9600/C9800 MAINTENANCE MANUAL

## **Document Revision History**

Nor Data Revision		vision	In-Chargo		
ver.	Dale	No.	Page	Changes	- In-Charge
1	2005-02-28			ISSUE	MD2 T. Asaba
2	2006-01-12		All page	Full change	HD2 S. Yamanaka

### Preface

This manual describes the procedures of the maintenance of the C9800/C9600 printer.

The document is produced for maintenance personnel use.

- *Note!* The descriptions in this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
  - In preparing the document, efforts have been made to ensure that the information in it is accurate.
  - The parts used for the printers are sensitive and, if handled improperly, may be damaged. It is strongly recommended that the products are maintained by maintenance men registered with Oki Data.
  - Errors may be crept into the document. Oki Data assumes no responsibility for any damage resulting from, or claimed to be the results of, those repairs, adjustments or modifications to the printers which are made by users using the manual.
  - Be sure to eliminate static electricity before starting work.

# In order to use the product with safety

In order to use the product with safety, make sure to read the user's manual (this manual) before using the product.

#### **General Caution**

	<b>∆</b> Warning
	Do not touch the safety switch of the internal parts of the printer. Electric shock may occur due to the occurrence of high pressure. The rotation of the gear may also cause injury.
	Do not use an extremely flammable spray around the printer. Fire may occur because of parts with high temperature.
	Please let our staff in Customer Center know after unplugging mains connector when the cover gets extremely hot, is smoking, emits questionable odor, or is making strange noise. Fire may occur.
	Please let our staffs in Customer Center know after unplugging mains connector when liquid such as water goes into the printer. Fire may occur.
	Please take a foreign object away after unplugging when you drop foreign objects such as clips into the printer. That situation may case electric shock, fire, and/or injury.
	Do not conduct an operation or an analysis other than specified in user's manual. That situation may case electric shock, fire, and/or injury.
	Please let our staffs in Customer Center know after unplugging mains connector when the printer has fallen down or damaged. That situation may case electric shock, fire, and injury.
$\bigcirc$	Do not connect the power cord, the printer cable, or the ground wire other than in- structed in user's manual. Fire can be induced if misused.
$\bigcirc$	Do not insert objects at the vent hole. Do not operate the printer with the rear cover opened. Electric shock, fire, and/or injuries may occur.
$\bigcirc$	Do not place a cup with liquid on the printer. Electric shock, fire, and/or injuries may occur.

	<b>∆</b> Warning
	Risk of explosion if battery is replaced by an incorrect type. Battery of the printer need not to be replaced. Do not touch the battery. Replace the whole board to replace the CU main board. In the case of replacing batteries at board repairs, replace with the specified type ones. In- stallation of another type batteries may result in explosion. Caution for used batteries are as follows; do not recharge, force open, heat or dispose of in fire.
	When open the printer cover, do not touch the fuser unit. You may get burned.
	Do not throw toner cartridges, or image drum cartridges into fire. You may get burned by dust explosion.
$\bigcirc$	We do not guarantee operations when UPS (Uninterruptible Power Supply) is used. Do not use UPS. It may cause fire.

# **∆**Caution



Do not go near an ejection area while the power is on and in printing. You may get injured.

# Contents

1.	Conf	figuration	9
	1.1	System Configuration	9
	1.2	Printer Composition	10
	1.3	Optional Composition	11
	1.4	Specifications	13
	1.5	Interface Specifications	15
		1.5.1 Parallel Interface Specifications	15
		1.5.2 USB Interface Specifications	18
		1.5.3 Network Interface Specifications	19
2.	Desc	criptions of Operations	20
	2.1	Main Control PCB	21
	2.2	Engine Control PCB (S2V PWB)	25
	2.3	Power Unit	26
	2.4	Mechanical process	27
		2.4.1 Electrophotographic Processing Mechanism	28
		2.4.2 Paper Processing Mechanism	32
	2.5	Sensor	41
		2.5.1 Paper-Related Sensor	41
		2.5.2 Other Sensors	42
	2.6	Color Drift Correction	43
	2.7	Image Transfer Control According to Environmental Change (Room Temperature Relative Humidity)	and 43
	2.8	Paper Jam Detector	44
	2.9	Cover Open	45
	2.10	Toner Low Detection	46
	2.11	Paper Size Detection	49
	2.12	Power ON Process	50
		2.12.1 Self-Diagnostic Test	50
	2.13	Color Drift Detection	51
	2.14	Reading Version of Routine Replacement Units	52
	2.15	Life Counter of Replaceable Units	52
	2.16	Toner Usage Level Detection	52
3.	Print	ter Installation	53
	3.1	Precautions and Prohibition	53
	3.2	Printer Unpacking Procedure	55
	3.3	Printer Installation Instructions	56
	3.4	Packed Units and Attachments	57
	3.5	Assembly Procedure	58
		3.5.1 Printer Main Body	58
		3.5.2 Power Cable Connection	65
		3.5.3 Installation of Optional Components	69
		3.5.4 Checking of Optional-Component Recognition	80
	3.6	MenuMap Printing	81
	3.7	How to Connect	83
	3.8	Checking of User Paper	86

4.	Parts	s Repla	acement	.87
	4.1	Precaut	tions When Replacing Parts	. 87
	4.2	Parts L	ayout	. 89
	4.3	Parts F	Replacement Method	104
		4.3.1	Cover-Rear, Cover-Side (R), and Cover-Side (R) Rear	105
		4.3.2	Cover-Side (L) and Cover Assy-Front	106
		4.3.3	Stacker Assy-FU	107
		4.3.4	Cover Assy-OP Panel, Cover-Guard (R), Cover-Guard (Front) and	
			Cover-Guard (L)	108
		4.3.5	OP PCB	109
		4.3.6	Cover Assy-Top	110
		4.3.7	FAN-PCB-Assy, CU-Board-Assy and S2V-PU-Board	111
		4.3.8	Job-Offset-Assy and Basket-Assy	113
		4.3.9	Plate Top Assy	115
		4.3.10	Eject-Assy	116
		4.3.11	Motor-Pulse-Belt and Sensor-Resist-Assy	117
		4.3.12	FDR Unit-MPT	119
		4.3.13	FDR Unit-Resist	120
		4.3.14	Duct Assy	121
		4.3.15	HV-Assy	122
		4.3.16	Power Unit	123
		4.3.17	Low Voltage Power Source Assy and Motor-FAN	124
		4.3.18	Belt-Assy	125
		4.3.19		126
		4.3.20	Unit-Duplex	127
		4.3.21	MDT Food Dollar	128
		4.3.22		129
5.	Main	tenanc	e Menus	130
	5.0	Svstem	Maintenance Menu	130
		5.0.1	ID Check Pattern Print ("TEST PRINT MENU" Item)	132
	5.1	Mainter	nance Menu and Its Function	135
	•••	5.1.1	Maintenance Menu	135
		5.1.2	Engine Maintenance Mode	135
		5.1.3	Various Printing Methods with a Stand-Alone Printer Coming with a Controller	155
	5.2	Adiustn	nent After Replacing Parts	156
	-	5.2.1	Precautions when Replacing the Engine Control PCB	156
		5.2.2	Precautions Upon EEPROM Replacement	156
		5.2.3	Replace EEPROM After Replacing CU PCB (600dpi Model)	157
		5.2.4	Set Destination (Check Procedure: Print Demo Page) (600dpi Model)	157
		5.2.5	Restoring Flash ROM Details of the CU PCB (600dpi Model)	158
		5.2.6	Precautions When Replacing OkiLAN 8200e or OkiLAN 8200e Mounted CL	J
			PCB (600dpi Model)	158
		5.2.7	CU PCB of 1200 dpi Printer and Replacement of Mounted Components	159
		5.2.8	Precautions in Key Chip Replacement (1200 dpi printer)	159
		5.2.9	Precautions in EEPROM Replacement (1200 dpi printer)	160
		5.2.10	Precautions in HDD Replacement (1200 dpi printer)	160
		5.2.11	Product Code of Maintenance HDD (1200 dpi printer)	161
		5.2.12	Product Code of Maintenance CU Program (600 dpi printer)	163
	5.3	Density	Correction	164
	5.4	Paper 7	Thickness Detection/Sensitivity Correction	165

6.	Peri	iodical Maintenance	166		
	6.1	Routine Replacement of Consumable Parts	166		
	6.2	Cleaning	166		
	6.3	LED Lens Array Cleaning	166		
	6.4	Pickup Roller Cleaning	167		
	6.5	Cleaning Feed Roller	168		
7.	Mal	function Repair Procedure	174		
	7.1	Precautions Before Repairs	174		
	7.2	Items to Check Before Remedying Abnormal Image	174		
	7.3	Precautions Before Remedying Abnormal Image	174		
	7.4	Troubleshooting Preparations	174		
	7.5	Troubleshooting	174		
		7.5.1 LCD Message List	175		
		7.5.2 Preparing for Troubleshooting	185		
		7.5.3 Troubleshooting With Abnormal Image	200		
	7.6	Check Fuse	215		
	7.7	Wireless LAN Trouble Shooting	216		
		7.7.1 Initial Investigation	216		
		7.7.2 Symptoms and How to Handle Them	218		
	7.8	Wireless LAN Card Trouble Shooting	228		
		7.8.1 Connection Error in Web browser	228		
		7.8.2 Caninor Phint	230 230		
		7.8.4 Can't Install the Certificate	239 240		
		7.8.5 Other Questions	242		
8.	Con	nnection Diagram	246		
	81	Check Besistance Value	246		
	8.2	Diagram of Part Layout of Various PCB	253		
9.	Erro	or message list	260		
	9.1	Message Chart of C9600	260		
	9.2	Message Chart of C9800	268		
	9.3	Illustration appears on the operating panel	276		
	-				

# 1. CONFIGURATION

### 1.1 System Configuration

Figure 1-1 illustrates the System Configuration of this printer.



#### 1.2 Printer Composition

The internal part of the printer consists of the following parts.

- Digital Photo Processor
- Paper Travel Path
- Control Unit (CU and PU)
- Operation Panel
- Power Source (High Voltage Area/Low Voltage Area)

Figure 1-2 illustrates the printer composition.



#### 1.3 Optional Composition

This printer comes with the following options.

(1) 2ndTray/3rdTray

(2)



(3) Large-Volume Paper Tray



(4) Additional Memory: 128, 256, 512MB



Note C5300 parts are prohibited for use with the C9800/C9600.

Note .

(5) Internal Harddisk



C7500/C7300/C9500/C9300 parts are prohibited for use with the C9800/C9600. Do not use the hard disk for the C7500/C7300/C9500/C9300. The hard disk for 1200 dpi and the one for 600 dpi are not interchangeable, as their formats differ.



(7) Finisher Unit



1.4	Specifications				
	(1)	Dimensions (H $\times$ W $\times$ D):	471 mm $\times$ 654 mm $\times$ 623 mm		
	(2)	Weight:	76.1 kg		
	(3)	Paper Paper Type:	Regular paper and transparency		
		Paper Size:	Post Card, Legal 13" or 14", Executive, A4, A5, B5, A6, A3, A3 Nobi, B4 (However, Post Card:1stTray and Multi-purpose-Tray only)		
		Continuous Paper Feed:	1st Tray: 64 to 216 g/m²Multi-purpose-Tray: 64 to 268 g/m²		
	(4)	Print Speed			
		Color:	36 ppm (OHP: 10 ppm)		
		Monochrome:	40 ppm (OHP: 15 ppm)		
		Post Card, Label, Heavy Paper:	15 ppm		
	(5)	Resolution:	1200 $ imes$ 600/16 bit gray scale (C9800 Series)		
			$600 \times 600/32$ bit gray scale (C9600 Series)		
	(6)	Input Power:	110~127VAC ±10% 220~240VAC ±10%		
	(7)	Power Consumption	Peak: 1500WNormal: 750W average (Reference value)Idle: 200W (Reference value)Power Save Mode: 28W		
	(8)	Frequency:	50/60Hz ± 1Hz		
	(9)	Noise			
		During Operations:	54 dB (when second tray is not attached)		
		Standby Time:	42 dB		
		Power Save:	28 dB		
	(10)	Life of Consumables			
		Toner Cartridge: Large-Volume Toner Cartridge: Imaging Drum:	5,000 page (A4 5% Duty) (Y, M, C, K each) 15,000 page (A4 5% Duty) (Y, M, C, K each) 26,000 page (A4 5% Duty, Continuous Printing) (for 3P/J) (Y, M, C, K each)		
	(11)	Routine Replacement of Consu	mable Parts		
		Fuser Unit Assy:	Every 100,000 pages		
		Transfer Belt Unit Assy:	100,000 page equivalent (for 3P/J)		
		Feed Roller Set:	Around 120,000 pages		
		MPT Feed Roller Set:	Around 120,000 pages		
		Waste Toner Box:	30,000 pages or equivalent (3P/J)		

# (12) Temperature and Relative Humidity

#### Temperature

	Temperature (°F)	Temperature (°C)	Remarks
Operating	50 to 89.6	10 to 32	17 to 27 °C (Temperature guaranteeing full-color print quality)
Not Operating	32 to 109.4	0 to 43	Power OFF
Storage (1 Year Max)	-14 to 109.4	-10 to 43	Drum and Toner: Yes
Transport (1 month Max)	-20 to 122	-29 to 50	Drum: Yes/Toner: No
Transport (1 month Max)	-20 to 122	-29 to 50	Drum and Toner: Yes

#### **Temperature Conditions**

Relative Humidity

#### Relative Humidity Conditions

(13) Printer Life: every	Relative Humidity 1,000,000 page	Maximum Web Bulb (formaeraturaper) c	Remarks r 5 years
Operating	20 to 80	25	50-70% (Temperature guaranteeing full-color print quality)
Not Operating	10 to 90	26.8	Power OFF
Storage	10 to 90	35	
Transport	10 to 90	40	

#### 1.5 Interface Specifications

#### 1.5.1 Parallel Interface Specifications

#### 1.5.1.1 Parallel Interface Overview

Item	Details	
Corresponding mode	Comatible mode, nibble mode, ECP mode	
Data bit length	Compatible: 8, Nibble: 4, ECP: 9 bit	

#### 1.5.1.2 Parallel Interface Connector and Cable

(1) Connector

Printer: 36pConnector (Female)

57LE-40360-12 (D56) (DDK Ltd.) equivalent product

Cable: 36pConnector (Male)

57FE-30360-20N (D8) (DDK Ltd.) equivalent product



Pin arrangement from interface cable side

#### (2)Cable

Use a cable shorter than 1.8m.

(Use a cable with a shielded twisted-pair wire for to prevent noise interference.)

1.5.1.3 Parallel Interface Level

Low Level: 0.0V to +0.8V

High Level: +2.4V to +5.0V

#### 1.5.1.4 Timing Chart

#### Compatible Mode

a) Data Reception Timing



b) Online/Online SW for Offline Switching Timing



c) Offline/Online SW for Online Switching Timing



d) nInit Timing (Default Invalid)



#### 1.5.1.5 Parallel Interface Signal

The name of the interface signal and pin number is indicated in Table 9-1.

Pin No.	Signal Name	Direction	Function
1	nStrobe (HostClk)	TO PRINTER	Pulse to read data. Data is read with the latter wire.
2	DATA 1	TO PRINTER	8bit parallel data.
3	DATA 2		Low Level: "0"
4	DATA 3		
5	DATA 4		
6	DATA 5		
7	DATA 6		
8	DATA 7		
9	DATA 8		
10	nAck (PtrClk)	FROM PRINTER	Signal indicating completion of incoming data.
11	Busy (PtrBusy)	FROM PRINTER	Indicates whether the printer state can accept data or not. Data cannot be accepted during High Level.
12	PError (AckDataReq)	FROM PRINTER	Paper error takes place during High Level.
13	Select (Xflag)	FROM PRINTER	Always High Level when the parallel interface is active.
14	nAutoFd (HostBusy)	TO PRINTER	Used for two-way communications.
15	Unused	—	Unconnected
16	GND	—	Ground for signal.
17	FG	_	Ground for chassis.
18	+5V	FROM PRINTER	Provides +5V. Cannot supply power to an external device.
19 to 30	GND	—	Ground for signal.
31	nlnit (nlnit)	TO PRINTER	Printer is initialized during Low Level.
32	nFault (nDataAvail)	FROM PRINTER	When printer is alarming the printer goes to Low Level state.
33	GND	—	The ground for signals
34	Unused	_	Un-connecting.
35	HILEVEL	FROM PRINTER	3.3kW inside printer is pulled up by +5V.
36	nSelectIn (IEEE1284 active)	TO PRINTER	Used for two-way communications. Always in Low Level in the compatible mode.

Table 1-1	Signals
-----------	---------

Note Noble mode signal names are indicated in the ( ).

Only indicates the Compatible Mode functions.

This printer supports the IEEE 1284-1994 Nibble Mode standardized by the Institute of Electric and Electronic Engineers (IEEE). Note that use of PCs and cables that do not comply with this standard may result in unforeseeable operations.

- 1.5.2 USB Interface Specifications
- 1.5.2.1 USB Interface Overview
  - (1) Basic Specifications USB 2.0 Compliant
  - (2) Transfer ModeFull Speed (max. 12Mbps+0.25%)High Speed (max. 480Mbps+0.05%)
  - (3) Power Control Self-Power Device
- 1.5.2.2 USB Interface Connector and Cable
  - (1) Connector

Printer-Side B Receptacle (Female)

UP Stream Port

UBB-4R-D14T-1 (JST Mfg. Co., Ltd.) equivalent product

Connector Pin Layout



Cable:

B Plug (Male)

(2) Cable

Cable Length: <2m USB 2.0 cable recommended.

(Use a cable with shielded wire)

#### 1.5.2.3 USB Interface Signal

	R1	Function		
1	Vbus	Power Source (+5V)	(Red)	
2	D-	Data Transfer	(White)	
3	D+	Data Transfer	(Green)	
4	GND	Signal GND	(Black)	
Shell	Shield			

- 1.5.3 Network Interface Specifications
- 1.5.3.1 Network Interface

Network protocols: TCP/IP, NetWare, Ether Talk, & NetBEUI

- 1.5.3.2 Network Interface Connector and Cable
  - (1) Connector

100 Base-TX/10 Base-T (automatically switched and not available simultaneously)

Connector pin layout



(2) Cable

Unshielded twisted pair cable with RJ-45 connector (Category 5 is recommended.)

1.5.3.3 Network Interface Signals

Pin No.	Signals	Signal Direction	Functions
1	TXD+	FROM PRINTER	Send Data +
2	TXD-	FROM PRINTER	Send Data -
3	RXD+	TO PRINTER	Received Data +
4	-	-	Unassigned
5	-	-	Unassigned
6	RXD-	TO PRINTER	Received Data -
7	-	-	Unassigned
8	-	-	Unassigned

# 2. DESCRIPTIONS OF OPERATIONS

The C9800/C9600 is an electrophotographic tandem color page printer. It features an LED array, OPC, dry one-component non-magnetic phenomenon, roller transfer, thermo-compression fuser and other technologies. The printer converts single-color (black) computer text into optical pulses to write them on the surface of its optical drums.

#### 2.1 Main Control PCB

#### Main Control PCB (ASP-PWB) (1200dpi)

Figure 2-1-1 illustrates the block diagram of the Main Control PCB (ASP PWB).



Figure 2-1-1

#### Main Control PCB (HMO-PWB) (600dpi)

Figure 2-1-2 illustrates the block diagram of the Main Control PCB (HMO PCB).



Figure 2-1-2

The main control PCB of the 1200dpi-Printer consists of a CPU, RAM, HDD, CompactFlash, SouthBridge LSI, EEPROM, KeyChip, PCI Bus Option and Advanced Interface.

- (1) CPU 1GHz Transmeta TM5800 CPU.
- (2) RAM

There are 3 types of RAMs. SDRAM DIMM is the only user option RAM. The DDR and video RAM configuration is fixed and cannot be modified. Only the total memory of the DDR and SDRAM DIMM is recognized as a usable RAM within the system configuration. DDR : This is 256MB and 266MHz in speed, and directly soldered on the ASP PCB. SDRAM DIMM: 128, 256, and 512MB; 133MHz speed, 144p DIMM mounted in DIMM slot. Video RAM : RAM that is directly soldered on ASP PCB for the video LSI.

(3) HDD/CompactFlash

The 1200-dpi program is stored in a storage medium. Depending on the model, the system is equipped with HDD or CompactFlash. However, HDD may be added as an option to a model with CompactFlash. HDD is a mold assembly similar to the one for the 600-dpi system.

(4) SouthBridge LSI

This is a ALI-make BGA package LSI. It mainly controls the USB I/F, Centro I/F, image processing LSI, Ethernet board, and MFP extension board via the PCI bus.

(5) Image Processing LSI

This is an EFI-make BGA package LSI. It is mainly for image processing.

(6) EEPROM

This is a 3.3V/256kbit EEPROM with an 8-pin DIP package mounted on the IC socket. It stores various settings that the control unit manages.

(7) KeyChip

The KeyChip is an 8-pin DIP package mounted on the IC socket. It is purchased from EFI and stores EFI management information.

(8) PCI Bus

100-pin: An MFP extension board is available as optional equipment.68-pin: A LAN card is provided as standard equipment.

#### (9) Advanced Interface

Standard : Centronic Parallel I/F (IEEE-1284) USB (USB2.0) I/F Ethernet Board Additional PCB : MFP Extension Board (PCI BUS Connection) The main control PCB of the 600dpi-Printer consists of a CPU, secondary cache SRAM, ROM, RAM, EEPROM, Flash ROM, memory control LSI (CB1), interface control LSI (CiF1), IDE HDD, PCI Bus Option and advanced interface.

- CPU
  The CPU features a 64bit bus RISC PowerPC750FX processor. This operates at 720MHz, 5.5 times the speed of a 130.9MHz (bus clock) clock.
- (2) Secondary Cache SRAM

The PowerPC750FX cache is inside the CPU, only.

Speed : Same as CPU Core CLK

Capacity: Primary Cache: D cache = 32KB, I cache = 32KB

Secondary Cache: 512KB

(3) ROM

ROMs are installed in the two 144-pin DIMM slots; the program ROM in slot A and the Japanese Kanji font in slot B. When the system is used for a PCL printer, the DIMM installed in slot A contains both the program and the Japanese font.

(4) RAM

128MB of RAM has been installed directly on the board.

There are 2x144p DIMM RAM slots. There is no limitation in where the DIMM is mounted. SDRAM DIMM Specifications :

Speed : PC133 or faster Capacity : 128/256/512MB Property : No Parity, No ECC, SPD Information Necessary, Number of Chips Mounted: 4 or 8

(5) EEPROM

This is a 3.3V/32kbit EEPROM with an 8-pin DIP package mounted on the IC socket. It stores various settings that the control unit manages.3

(6) Flash ROM

A 4MB flash ROM is directly on the HMO PCB. It consists of one 2048 x 16bit chip, and can store fonts, macro, etc.

(7) Memory Control LSI (CB1)

This is an NEC696 pin BGA package ASIC. It mainly controls the CPU I/F, memory, video data compression/extraction, and video I/F with the PU.

(8) Interface Control LSI (CiF1)

This is an Oki BGA package ASIC. It controls PU command I/F, the operation panel I/F, IDE I/F, Centro I/F, USB I/F, PCI I/F, EEPROM, and SPD (SDRAM DIMM) I/F.

(9) IDE HDD

The IDE connector is directly set on the PCB. The IDE HDD exclusively molded into an Assy is connected here. This is used to store font data, temporarily store video data that has already been edited and upon registering form data.

(10) PCI Bus

In addition, two PCI I/F slots are provided for optional circuit boards. 100-pin: A wireless LAN card is available as optional equipment. 68-pin: A LAN card is provided as standard equipment.

#### (11) Advanced Interface

Standard : Centronic Two-Way Parallel I/F (IEEE-1284) USB (USB2.0) Interface Ethernet Board (Ethernet is a standard spec) Additional PCB : (PCI BUS Connection)

Wireless LAN Card

#### 2.2 Engine Control PCB (S2V PWB)

Figure 2-2 illustrates the block diagram of the Engine Control PCB (S2V PWB).



#### 2.3 Power Unit

This is a high voltage power unit consisting of high voltage power source circuit and a low voltage power unit composed of a power unit consists of an AC filter circuit, low voltage power source circuit and heater drive circuit.

(1) Low Voltage Power Unit

This circuit generates the following voltage.

Output Voltage	Purpose		
+5V (1)	PU, Logic Circuit Power Source		
+5V (2)	LED Head		
+5V (3)	CU		
+24V	For Monitor Drive		

#### (2) High Voltage Power Unit

This circuit generates the following voltage that is more powerful than +24V necessary for the electrophotographic process, according to the control sequence from the control PCB.

Output	Voltage	Purpose	Remarks
СН	-0.8 to -1.4kV	Power to Electrification Roller	
DB	-100 to -450V/250V	Power to Development Roller	
SB	-300 to -700V	Power to Toner Supply Roller	
BB	Drop from SB Output with Zener	Power to Development Blade	
TR	0 to 7kV	Power to Transfer Roller	

#### 2.4 Mechanical process

Figure 2-3 illustrates the mechanical process of the C9800/C9600.



Figure 2-3

#### 2.4.1 Electrophotographic Processing Mechanism

(1) Electrophotographic process

The overview of the electrophotographic process is described below.

① Electrification

DC power is applied to the CH roller to evenly negatively electrify the surface of the OPC drum.

2 Exposure

The LED head irradiates light on the surface of the OPC drum that is charged with a negative electrical load. The negative electrical load attenuates according to the intensity of light, for the irradiation area of the OPC drum surface. Further, the electrostatic latent image is created on the OPC drum surface according to the electrical potential.

③ Development

The negatively charged toner comes in contact with the OPC drum to fuse the electrostatic latent image by electrostatic force, to create a significant image on the surface of the OPC drum.

(4) Transfer

Paper is pressed against the surface of the OPC drum, then conveyed by the transfer roller from behind. The toner and positive electrical load of a reverse electrode is applied, then the toner image is transferred to the paper.

5 Cleaning

The cleaning blade removes residual toner on the OPC drum after the toner is transferred to the paper.

6 Fuser

Heat and pressure is applied to the toner image on the paper to fuse the image on the paper.

#### (2) Electrification

A negative DC power is applied to the electrification roller to evenly negatively electrify the surface of the OPC drum.



#### (3) Exposure

The LED head irradiates light on the surface of the OPC drum that is charged with a negative electrical load. The negative electrical load attenuates according to the intensity of light, for the irradiation area of the OPC drum surface. Further, the electrostatic latent image is created on the OPC drum surface according to the electrical potential.



#### (4) Development

The negatively charged toner comes in contact with the OPC drum to fuse the electrostatic latent image by electrostatic force, to create a significant image on the surface of the OPC drum.

 The sponge roller precipitates toner on the development roller. The toner is then negatively electrified.
 Development blade



- ② The development blade removes excess toner from the development roller, then a thin toner layer is created on the development roller.
- ③ The toner is sucked into the electrostatic latent image where the OPC drum and development roller comes in contact.
- (5) Transfer

The transfer roller is made of a conductive sponge. Paper is pressed against the OPC drum surface, then the paper and OPC drum surface is adhered.

Paper is pressed against the surface of the OPC drum, then conveyed by the transfer roller from behind. The toner and positive electrical load (that is reverse with the toner) is applied, then the toner image is transferred to the paper.

When the power source applies powerful positive power on the transfer roller, the positive electrical load induced by the transfer roller is transferred to the paper surface at the contact point between the transfer roller and paper. The negative electrical load toner is then sucked from the OPC drum surface on to the paper surface.



#### (6) Fuser

The toner image transferred on the paper is fused on the paper by heat and pressure when the paper passes through the heat roller and backup roller.

The Teflon coated heat roller is heated by a 800W or 350W internal halogen lamp, and backup roller is heated by a 50W internal halogen lamp. The fuser temperature is controlled according to the sum of the temperature that is not contacted with the thermistor ground against the heat roller surface and the temperature that is detected with the thermistor ground on the backup roller surface. There is also a thermostat for safety purposes. When the heat roller temperature rises above a certain temperature, the thermostat opens and shuts down the power supplied to the heater. The backup roller unit is pressed against the heater with a press spring on both sides.



#### (7) Cleaning

The cleaning blade scrapes off residual toner on the OPC drum after the toner is transferred to the paper, then the disposal toner of the disposal toner box is collected at the rear.

(8) Cleaning

Toner residue on the Transfer Belt is scraped off with the cleaning blade and collected into the Belt Waste Toner Box at the front of the printer.



#### 2.4.2 Paper Processing Mechanism

Figure 2-4 illustrates how the paper transfers through the C9800/C9600.



Figure 2-4 Paper Path

- (1) Paper Supplied from the 1st Tray
  - 1. Paper proceeds when the paper supply motor turns (CCW) and the paper supply clutch is connected, until the IN1 sensor turns ON.
  - 2. When the IN1 sensor is turned ON, a certain volume of paper is further transported until it is against the 1st resist roller. (this corrects paper skew)
  - 3. After paper has hit the roller while the Resist Motor is running (CW), the electromagnetic clutch that transmits drive power to the Resist Rollers 1 is connected and paper is sent 2 to the Feed Belt via Intermediate Feed Rollers and Resist Rollers.



Figure 2-5

- (2) Paper Supplied from the Option Tray
  - 1. Paper proceeds when the paper supply motor turns (CCW) and the paper supply clutch is connected, until the IN sensor of the top tray to supply the paper, turns ON.
  - 2. When the IN sensor is turned ON, a certain volume of paper is further transported against the regist roller. (this corrects paper skew)
  - 3. The paper is conveyed to the C9800/C9600 when the electromagnetic clutch which delivers power that the register strike motor is turning (CW) and the thrust reliance of a paper is completed to the 1st register strike roller is connected.



Figure 2-6

- (3) Paper Supplied from MPT
  - 1. In the usual case, sheet receiving is depressed by the arm for rise and fall at a home position.
  - 2. When a regist motor rotates in the direction of (b), the arm for rise and fall drives and sheet receiving is rotated. The paper on sheet receiving goes up to the position where a lift rise sensor is turned on, and feeding is attained because the arm for rise and fall goes up.
  - 3. The hopping motor is shared with the tray and MPT feeding uses the inversion of tray feeding.

If a hopping motor reverse-rotates, a pickup roller and a feed roller will drive and a paper will be sent out.

- 4. After an entrance sensor (2) is turned on by the paper tip, a paper is sent by specification length. A paper will stop, if the tip reaches the 2nd register strike roller Assy.
- 5. A regist motor rotates in the direction of (a) simultaneously, and a paper is conveyed with the 2nd regist roller Assy. A hopping motor is rotated until a paper arrives at the position of the image drum cartridge (black).
- 6. A hopping motor is rebooted, in order to make paper feed to the following paper, when an after the end escapes from the hopping sensor.
- 7. When operation of 4 to 6 is repeated and a lift rise sensor turns off, a regist motor is rotated in the direction of (b), and the arm for rise and fall is driven, and it goes up until a lift rise sensor turns on the paper on sheet receipt.
- 8. After the completion of paper sending operation, when a lift rise sensor detects off, a regist motor is rotated in the direction of (b), and sheet receiving is returned to a home position by dropping the arm for rise and fall.



Figure 2-7
- (4) Conveyor Belt
  - 1. The conveyor belt motor drives the conveyor belt when turning in the direction of the arrow. The belt unit consists of one transfer roller that is directly under the drum for each color, with the conveyor belt in between the drum.

When a specified voltage is applied, the conveyor belt and transfer roller transfers the toner image on the drum for each color, then feeds the paper on the conveyor belt to the fuser unit.



Figure 2-8

- (5) ID Unit Up/Down Operations
  - 1. The C-ID motor drives the ID unit up and down.
  - 2. Figure 2-9-a indicates ID unit operations during color printing. When the C-ID motor rotates (CCW), the lift uplink slides to the left, and as indicated in Figure 2-9-a, each ID unit moves DOWN. The printer is now ready for color printing.
  - 3. Figure 2-9-b indicates the ID unit operations during monochrome printing. When the C-ID motor rotates (CW), the lift uplink slides to the right, and as indicated in Figure 2-9-b, all units other than the K-ID moves UP. The printer is now ready for black-and-white printing.

ID Unit Operations During Color Printing



Figure 2-9-a

ID Unit Operations During Monochrome Printing





- (6) Fuser Unit and Paper Output
  - 1. The fuser unit and discharge roller is driven by a single DC motor. The heater roller turns when the fuser motor turns in the direction of the arrow (a). This roller fuses the toner image on the paper with heat and pressure.
  - 2. At the same time, the four discharge rollers are activated to discharge paper.
  - 3. The discharge path to the face-up or face-down stacker is automatically switched by the paper separator solenoid.



Figure 2-10

- (7) Double-Side Printer Unit
  - 1. When the double-side Printer Unit receives double-side print instructions, the separator is opened by the solenoid after one side of the paper fed from the tray is completely printed, then the path is switched to the double-side printer unit.

At this time, roller (1) turns in the direction of arrow (a), therefore, the paper is retracted to the undersurface of a double-side printer unit.

2. Further, when the tip of the paper passes through the double-side printer entrance sensor after a certain period of time, the roller starts a reverse rotation. Roller (1) turns in the direction of arrow (b), then sends the paper inside the double-side printer unit. After that, it passes through roller (2), (3), (4) and (5), prints the other side of the paper, then discharges the paper, and re-feeds it back to the unit.



Figure 2-11

### 2.5 Sensor

### 2.5.1 Paper-Related Sensor



Sensor	Function	State of Sensor	
MPT Hopping Sensor Paper Hopping Sensor	This detects the top of the paper entering and then determines the timing to switch from the hopping to the conveyor.	L : Paper Available H : Paper Unavailable	
IN2 Sensor	Detects the leading edge of transferred paper. Determines the paper length from the time when the trailing edge turns off the sensor.	L : Paper Available H : Paper Unavailable	
Paper Discharge Sensor (Exit sensor)	This detects the tip and end of the paper, then determines paper discharge.	L : Paper Available H : Paper Unavailable	
Double-Side Print Entrance Sensor (Dup-in1 sensor)	This determines the tip of the paper entering the double-side printer unit, then determines the times it takes for the inverse roller to inverse from CCW to CW.	H : Paper Available L : Paper Unavailable	
Double-Side Print Rear Sensor (Dup R sensor)	This detects the tip of the paper after inversion by the double-side printer unit.	H : Paper Available L : Paper Unavailable	
Double-Side Print Front Sensor (Dup F sensor)	Detects the leading edge of paper reversed by the Duplex Unit. Determines whether to feed paper again.	H : Paper Available L : Paper Unavailable	
Stack Full FD Sensor Stack Full FU Sensor	Detects Stacker full.	H : Stack Full L : Stack Empty	
Job off Sensor	This detects paper conveyance to the paper discharge roller, then determines the timing to offset job operations.	H : Paper Available L : Paper Unavailable	

#### 2.5.2 Other Sensors

- Paper Empty Sensor
  This sensor checks whether the paper cassette is empty or not.
- ② Paper Near-End Sensor This sensor checks whether the paper cassette will be empty soon or not.
- MPT Paper Empty SensorThis sensor checks whether there is paper in the front feeder.
- ④ MBF Hopping Switch This micro-switch checks whether the front feeder table is in the UP position or DOWN position.
- 5 Paper Size Switch

This sensor detects the size of the paper in the paper cassette.

- 6 ID UP/DOWN Sensor (one sensor each for Y, M, C, K) This sensor checks whether the I/D unit is in the UP position or DOWN position.
- Toner K, Y, M and C Sensor
  This sensor checks the toner residual quantity in an image drum, when a sensor lever measures a time interval to open periodically.
- (8) RFID Sensor

The radio communications of this sensor are carried out to IC tip built in the toner cartridge, and it checks the existence of a toner cartridge, and the toner residual quantity in a toner cartridge.

- Thermal Sensor
  Refer to 2.7 "Image Transfer Control Due to Environmental Change".
- Humidity Sensor
  Refer to 2.7 "Image Transfer Control Due to Environmental Change".
- (1) Transparency Sensor

This sensor detects whether there is a transparency or not.

12 Color Registration Sensor

This sensor reads the color registration pattern printed at the left and right edges of the Transfer Belt. (See 2.13.)

- Density Sensor
  This sensor measures the pattern density to measure the density printed on the conveyor belt.
- Media Thickness Sensor
  This sensor detects the thickness of the media.
- Disposal Toner Sensor
  This sensor checks whether the disposal toner in the disposal toner box is full or not.
- If Slack sensorThis sensor detects a slack in paper during feeding to control the Fuser speed.
- 17 Belt rotation sensor
- (B) Detection of spiral rotation of Waste Toner Duct
- (19) Waste Toner Box Spiral Sensor

### 2.6 Color Drift Correction

The C9800/C9600 comes with several ID units and LED heads, therefore, causes color drift. This mechanical color drift can automatically be corrected with the following procedures.

- (1) Automatically Corrected Color Drift
  - ① X Axis Color Drift (position off-alignment due to LED head)
  - ② Skew Color Drift (position off-alignment due to LED head)
  - ③ Y Axis Color Drift (I/D unit and position off-alignment due to LED head)
- (2) Correction Method

The color drift detection pattern set is printed on the belt. This is then read by the reflection sensor to detect the color drift value of each color and therefore, determine the correction level. The modification takes place by comparing the each colors' (Cyan, Magenta and Yellow) write timing with black, according to the correction value.

### 2.7 Image Transfer Control According to Environmental Change (Room Temperature and Relative Humidity)

The C9800/C9600 measures the room temperature with the room temperature sensor and measures the relative humidity with the humidity sensor. It further computes the optimal transfer voltage under the environmental conditions (temperature and RH) measured. Then printing is controlled in real-time at this optimal voltage.

### 2.8 Paper Jam Detector

The C9800/C9600 detects paper jam during printing after turning on the power source. If there is any paper jam detected, the printing process is immediately canceled. In this case, open the cover, remove the paper that is jammed, and close the cover to resume printing.

Error Code Displayed on LCD	Error	State	
400,401	Paper Size Error	After the Entrance Cassette Sensor turns ON, it won t turn OFF for a certain period of time. It detects several different types of paper sizes.	
372	Mis-feeding in Double-Side Print Conveyance Assy Failure to feed paper from the Double-Side For Conveyance Assy.		
390	MT mis-feed.	Paper feed from the MT failed. (If, after Hopping, the Entrance MT Sensor does not turn ON within a certain period of time)	
391 392	Cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 mid-	Paper supply failed from Cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5.	
393 394 395		(If, after Hopping, the Entrance Cassette Sensor does not turn ON within a certain period of time)	
370	Paper jam when printing on the other side with Double- Side Print.	The double-side printer rear sensor does not turn ON when printing the other side with the double-side printer unit.	
383	Paper jam at the entrance of the Double-Side Printer Unit.	The double-side printer IN sensor does not turn ON when supplying paper to the double-side printer unit.	
371	Paper jam at the input of the Double-Side Printer Unit.	The double-side printer front sensor does not turn ON while the double-side printer unit is operating.	
382	Paper discharge jam.	The paper discharge sensor senses the tip of the paper but does not sense the end of the paper after that within a certain period of time. The paper discharge sensor turns ON, but does not turn OFF after that.	
381	Paper conveyance jam	The paper is conveyed on the belt, however, the paper discharge sensor does not turn ON.	
380	Paper output jam.	After hopping is completed, the paper does not reach the entrance belt sensor or the MT sensor.	
490	MT out of paper.	If printing is started when the MT is out of paper.	
491 492 493 494	Cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 out of paper	Cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 out of paper	



### 2.9 Cover Open

If the top cover of the C9800/C9600 is open, the cover open micro switch turns OFF. Then the 24V to high voltage power source, and high voltage output is shutdown. At the same time, the CPU receives a COVOPN signal indicating the micro-switch state, to proceed with cover open processing.



### 2.10 Toner Low Detection

• Structure

This device consists of a constant speed rotating agitation gear and agitation bar.



Detection

The minimum height length of stay (OFF time) of a target board which attached the toner low level state in the end of a churning bar is measured and detected by the sensor.



### Toner High level State

- The agitation bar interlocks and turns with the agitation gear.
- Since there is a toner even if a agitation bar reaches the maximum height, the other side of the bar is still inside the toner. Therefore, the agitation bar turns by the force of the agitation gear.



Toner Low Level State

• When the agitation bar reaches the maximum height, the agitation bar falls in the minimum height by prudence since there is no resistance by the toner. At this time, the minimum height length of stay of a target board becomes long. This time is measured and a toner low level state is detected.



### Toner Supply Operation

 When continuation 3 cycle detection of the toner low level state is carried out, a toner supply agitator and a toner cartridge agitation spring will rotate, and the toner of a toner cartridge will be supplied to the inside of an image drum cartridge. Then, when one cycle of toner high level is detected, toner supply agitator and a toner cartridge agitation spring will stop, and toner supply will stop. Toner High Level State (at 37ppm<sup>\*1</sup>)



Toner Low Level State (at 37ppm<sup>\*1</sup>)



• After a toner supply start, when a toner low sate is detected 20 consecutive times, it is recognized as the toner being low.

(After recognizing toner low, then toner low is displayed after printing an equivalent of 5% of 200 A4 sheets.)

The toner in a toner cartridge is lost.

- If a toner full state is detected 10 consecutive times, the toner low state is canceled.
- If the toner sensor does not change over 3 cycles (2.3 sec. X 3), then the toner sensor alarm is activated.
- The toner sensor does not detect anything when the drum motor is stopped.
  - <sup>1</sup> A 37ppm printout is at the warming up stage. T and t1 fluctuates in proportion to the printing speed.

### 2.11 Paper Size Detection

A cam is interlocked with the paper guide of the paper cassette, then four tab-pieces via this cam drives the system according to the paper guide setting position.

When the paper cassette is attached to the printer, the micro-switch detects the state of the tab-piece and then recognizes the size of the paper.

	PSZSW1	PSZSW2	PSZSW3	PSZSW4
Cassette NONE	0	0	0	0
A3 Nobi	0	0	1	1
Tabloid	1	0	1	1
A3	1	0	0	1
B4	0	0	0	1
Legal 14"	0	1	0	1
Legal 13"	0	1	0	0
A4 Portrait	1	1	1	0
Letter Portrait	1	1	1	1
Executive	1	1	0	1
B5 Portrait	1	1	0	0
Letter Landscape	1	0	1	0
A4 Landscape	0	0	1	0
A5	0	1	1	0
B5 Landscape	1	0	0	0
A6	0	1	1	1

### 2.12 Power ON Process

### 2.12.1 Self-Diagnostic Test

(1) Initial Test

When the power is turned On, the following check automatically takes place.

- (a) ROM Check
- (b) RAM Check
- (c) EEPROM Check
- (d) Flash ROM Check
- (e) Mechanical Check
- (f) Option Unit Check
- (2) ROM Check

The ROM is checked by calculating the HASH value.

- (3) RAM Check
  - (a) The type of RAM is checked for its specifications. Any RAM that falls out of the specifications will result in an Error.
  - (b) The RAM in each slot is checked by read-after-write.
- (4) EEPROM Check

The specific data stored in the fixed address of the EEPROM is checked.

(5) Flash ROM Check (600dpi only)

The flash ROM format is checked. If it is unformatted, then read-after-write check takes place and the flash ROM is formatted.

(6) Option Unit Check

Before entering the run mode, the unit is checked for the presence of an optional units (HDD, NIC, Option Tray, Double-Side Printer Unit, Finisher, etc.).

### 2.13 Color Drift Detection

The Z71-PCB reflective optical sensor detects color drift. There is one each on the left and right side in front of the cleaning blade behind the belt unit. A color drift detection pattern is printed on both ends of the left and right side of the belt. Then the reflective optical sensor reads this detection pattern to measure the drift level based on black as a standard. The correction value is then determined based on this measurement. Then the main scanning, sub-scanning, and skewed color drift correction automatically takes place.

This detection takes place when the power is turned ON, cover is closed, the printer is left unused for 2 hours or longer, and every time after printing 400 sheets.



Cleaning blade

### 2.14 Reading Version of Routine Replacement Units

This determines whether the parts are new or old according to the I/D of the consumable parts that are routinely replaced, the fuser unit, and the state of the fuse in the belt unit (good/dead). If the fuse is in a conductive state, then it is considered a new unit. A NEW or OLD decision takes place when the power is turned ON and when the cover is closed. When the part is NEW, the life counter of the unit is reset, and the NEW/OLD decision-making fuse in each unit is cut.

### 2.15 Life Counter of Replaceable Units

The following Table lists the life counter of the I/D, fuser unit, and belt unit that are routinely replaced consumable parts.

Unit	State	Life processing
ID	Count the drum rotation in a unit of [Letter	Stop Printing
	Paper Length + Paper Interval during	However, 1500 sheets can be
	continuous print].	printed by opening and closing
	Life: When printing a distance equivalent	the cover.
	to 30K sheets (3P/J).	
Toner Cartridge	Count the number of print dots.	Stop Printing
	Determine the usage level according to	However, 50 sheets can be
	the counter value.	printed by re-turning the power
	(Refer to 2.16)	back ON or opening/closing the
		cover. (A4 5%)
Belt Unit	Convert the drum rotation into [Letter	Stop Printing
	Paper Length + Distance Between Paper	However, 20 sheets can be
	Upon Continuous Printing].	printed by re-turning the power
	One sheet of paper passing through is	back ON or opening/ closing
	counted as one on the counter.	the cover.
	Life: When the counter value reached 100K.	
Fuser Unit	Disposal Toner Near-Full state.	Stop Printing
	If paper is longer than 13 inches, the	However, power is turned off
	number of the paper sheets will be an	and on again or opening/
	integer multiplied by 13 inches plus one.	closing the cover, the printer will
	Life: When counter value is 100K.	be able to print 500 more
		sheets or, after 150K, 50 more
		sheets.
Waste Toner Box	Converts the weight of discharged toner	Stop Printing
	to the number of A4 sheets and counts	When power is turned off and
	the number.	on again or opening/closing the
	Life: When the counter has reached 30K.	cover, the printer will be able to
		print up to 50 counts.

### 2.16 Toner Usage Level Detection

The toner usage level is detected by counting the number of dots printed. The counted number of dots is written in in IC tip in a toner cartridge.

Once toner low is detected, the toner shall be considered empty after dot counting 1,050 A4 sheets at 5%.

However, when the power is turned back ON, and the cover is opened and closed, the printer can still print 50 more sheets.

### 3. PRINTER INSTALLATION

### 3.1 Precautions and Prohibition

# **A**Warning

- Keep away from high temperatures and open flames.
- Please do not install in a place from which a chemical reaction is started (laboratory etc.).
- Do not install near inflammable solutions such as alcohol or thinner.
- Keep out of reach of children.
- Do not install on an unstable surface (the shaky stand, leaning place, etc.).
- Keep away from dust, humidity and direct sunlight.
- Keep away from the sea breeze and corrosive gases.
- Keep away from sources of vibration.
- Pull the power plug out of the socket and contact with a customer's service centre when the printer is dropped or the cover is damaged.
  - There is a risk of getting an electric shock and/or causing fire leading to personal injury.
- Do not use a power code, a printer cable, or a ground wire other than those that are indicated in User's Manual.
- Doing so may cause fire.
- Do not insert materials in a vent hole.
- Doing so may cause an electric shock and/or fire leading to personal injury.
- Do not put a cup with liquids such as water on the printer.
  Doing so may cause an electric shock and/or fire leading to personal injury.
- Do not touch the fuser and other parts when opened the cover. Doing so may result in getting burns.
- Do not throw toner cartridges and image drum cartridges into fire. Doing so may cause dust explosion leading to get burns.
- Do not use an inflammable spray near the printer. Failure to follow may cause fire since there is an area heating up within the printer.
- Pull the power plug out of the socket and contact with a customer's service centre when the cover is unusually hot, smoking, giving off questionable odour, or making a strange noise. There is a risk of fire.
- Pull the power plug out of the socket and contact with a customer's service centre when a liquid such as water enters in the internal parts of the printer. There is a risk of fire.
- Pull the power plug out of the socket and remove foreign materials such as clips when they fall inside the printer.
- There is a risk of getting an electric shock and/or causing fire leading to personal injury.
- Do not operate and/or disassemble the printer other than that which is directed in User's Manual. Doing so may cause an electric shock and/or fire leading to personal injury.

# 

- Do not block the vents on the printer.
- Do not place printer directly onto a carpet.
- Ensure printer has adequate ventilation.
- Keep printer way from sources of noise and magnetic fields.
- Do not install near a monitor or television.
- Please lift both sides when moving the printer.
- Since this printer has about 77kg of weight, please raise by three or more persons.
- Do not come closer to the paper's exit area when the power is turned on, and while in printing. Doing so may result in personal injury.

Explain instructions for use and settings to customers, showing instructions of the user's manual. Especially, explain the power cord and earth cable carefully.

3.2 Printer Unpacking Procedure





Each printer weighs about 77 kg. Lift them by three persons or more.

• Punch four handle holes out each on the side and lift the carton box.



- 3.3 Printer Installation Instructions
  - Install a printer under the desired temperature and humidity condition:
    - Ambient Temperature : 10 to 32°C
    - Ambient Humidity : 20 to 80% relative humidity
  - Maximum Wet-Bulb Temperature: 25°C
  - Take care not to allow dew condensation on printers.
  - When installing printers in an area of which ambient humidity is 30% or less, use a humidifier or antistatic mat.

### Installation Space

- Place a printer on a flat table, which has an adequate space for printer legs.
- Have an adequate room around printer.









### 3.4 Packed Units and Attachments

- Check if the packed units are free of flaws and dirt.
- Check if there are no missed or damaged attachments.
- Should any defective or unusual conditions are found, contact the section in charge.



Each printer weighs about 77 kg. Lift them by three or more persons.

□ Printer (main body) Image drum is mounted in the printer



□ Toner cartridge (four sets)



- Paper holder
- □ Power cord
- □ Core
- □ Power Plug
- $\hfill\square$  Warranty and Registration card
- □ Printer Software CD-ROM
- □ Utility CD-ROM (MLPro9800PS only)
- Users Manual
  - Set up- For Windows users
  - Set up for Macintosh, UNIX, Linux users
  - Printer functions
  - Application
  - Guidance for Set up and control (C9800 only)
  - Guidance for PS print (C9800 only)
  - Guidance for Color (C9800 only)
  - Guidance for Job control (C9800 only)
- $\hfill\square$  Guidance for Set up
- $\Box$  Quick Guidance
- Quick Guidance Bag

Note! No printer cables are included in printer packages.

### 3.5 Assembly Procedure

3.5.1 Printer Main Body

### **Remove Protective Equipment**

(1) Remove protection tapes on the side of printer (6 places), a sheet of paper and desiccant on the top. Desiccant



- (2) Press down the open button to open the top cover.
- (3) Pull out the protective equipment (8 places) and remove protection tapes.
- (4) Remove the paper cassette.
- (5) Remove the protective equipment inside the paper cassette.



### Install a toner cartridge in the printer

(1) Open the top cover of printer and remove protection tapes; stoppers and toner cover which are installed in the printer



(2) Shake the toner cartridge well and tear off the tape.



(3) Place the toner cartridge on the image drum cartridge, fitting a post into the hole.



(4) Turn tightly the lever (blue) of toner cartridge toward the arrow direction.



(5) Close the top cover.



Place a paper holder on the printer



Attach the quick guide bag



*Note!* Make sure to attach the bag to the place it does not cover vent hole.

### Loading a Paper

### For tray 1

- (1) Slide out the tray 1
- (2) Adjust to the desired paper size by an adjustment knob.

Reference: Same procedure for the tray 2, 3, 4 and 5 as of tray 1.



(3) Loosen the paper sufficiently and make sure their edge lined up.



(4) Place the paper facing down on the right side of tray 1.



**Note!** Both vertical and horizontal loading are possible for A4, B5 sized papers and letters, but vertical loading only for the other sized of papers.

- (5) Use an adjustment knob to adjust the size of papers.
- (6) Place the tray 1 back to the printer.



### For Multipurpose Tray

After placing the sheet of papers on the multi-purpose tray, set up the size of paper on the operating panel. "Horizontal loading for A4" has set up for factory-configured.

(1) Press down the lever on the right side of printer to open the multi-purpose tray.



(2) Open the paper supporter.



(3) Adjust the paper guide to the paper width.



(4) Loosen the papers sufficiently and make sure their edges lined up.



(5) Place the paper facing up-ward on the tray.



(6) Set up the size of multi-purpose tray on the operating panel.



- Select "PAPER SIZE" by pressing the button ▼ several times and press ENTER button ○.
- Select "PAPER SIZE" by pressing the button v several times and press ENTER button . The illustration is an example of selecting horizontal loading for letters
- Check if a "\*" mark appears at the left side of "HORIZONTAL FEEDING FOR LETTERS"
- READY TO PRINT" appears by pressing the ON LINE button .



#### 3.5.2 Power Cable Connection

### Conditions for Power Supplies

- The following conditions apply to the power supplies of printers: Alternate Current (AC) : 100 V ±10% Power Supply Frequency : 50, or 60 ±2 Hz
- For unstable power supplies, use voltage regulators etc.
- The maximum power consumptions of printers are 1,500 W. Be sure power supplies have power supply capacities adequate for the printers.

# Warning It may expose you to electric shocks or cause a fire.

- Make sure to turn off printers before attaching and detaching power supply cords and grounding wires to the printers. Keeping the power supply ON causes a fire or an electric shock.
- Grounding wires must be connected to dedicated grounding terminals. No grounding wires causes a fire or an electric shock. Consult with a dealer if grounding wires is impossible.
- Never connect the ground wires to water or gas pipes, or telephone grounds, lightning conductors or other lines. They cause a fire, an electric shock or a gas explosion.
- Always hold a plug while inserting or removing the power supply cord. Damaged cord is a result of pulling it, which causes a fire or an electric shock.
- Do not insert or pull out power supply plugs with wet hands. Make sure the power supply cord is well inserted. Otherwise causes a fire or electric shock.
- Do not insert or pull out the power supply plugs with wet hands. It causes an electric shock.
- Do not step on the power supply cord or put the things on them. Otherwise damages the cord and causes a fire and an electric shock.
- Do not tie the power supply cords in a bundle in use of the printer. It heats up and damages the cord, which is a result of a fire and an electric shock.
- Do not use the damaged power supply cords. It causes a fire or an electric shock.
- Do not use star-burst connections for printers.
- Do not connect a printer to the same receptacle outlet being used for electrical equipment other than the printer. Connecting a printer such a receptacle outlet, particularly being used for air conditioning, copying or shredding equipment, may cause a malfunction in the printer due to electrical noises. If a printer is connected to such a receptacle outlet by necessity, use a commercially available noise filter or noise-cut transformer.
- Do not use the extension cords. Normal printer operation may not be attained if using an extension cord due to the decreased AC voltage. If necessary, select the cord, which is rating 100 V, 15 A and more. Other types of cords cause a fire or an electric shock.
- Do not turn off the printer or pull out the power supply plugs while the printer are in use. It causes of a broken down of printer or an electric shock.
- Please disconnect printers from the mains supply if they will not be used for an extended period of time for safety.
- Use only those attached cord. Using other types of cords cause a fire or an electric shock.
- Do not use an attached cord to other appliances due to a fire or an electric shock.

Well explanation and showing the customers a user's manual avoids any troubles.

## Connect Power Supply Cord

*Note!* Be certain the power switch is placed in the OFF (O) position.



(1) Plug the power supply cord in the printer.



(2) Insert the power supply cord into the receptacle socket.



The connection of grounding wire is absolute.



### Press ON (I) of Power Switch



"READY TO PRINT" appears on the panel when ready.



### Turning off the Printer

- *Note!* The internal hard disk may be damaged and unusable if the printer is switched off immediately.
- (1) Keep pressing the SHUT DOWN and RE-START button for more than 4 seconds.



(2) Press the OFF button where "COMPLETION OF SHUTDOWN/EITHER TURNING OFF THE SWITCH OR RE-START" appears on the screen.



Memo: Press the SHUT DOWN/RE-START button as the procedure (2) to re-start the printer.

- 3.5.3 Installation of Optional Components
- (1) Extension Memory Installation

Install the extension memory to increase the memory space though the memory size of 256MB has loaded on the printer. Three kinds of extension memory are 128, 256 and 512MB. One memory slot is provided.



- *Note!* Recommend the extension memory of more than 128MB to be added for both sides printing.
  - Recommend adding the extension memory of 256MB or more to print banner-sheet paper.
  - Reduce the degree of errors with adding extension memory when "memory over-flow" or " collate error" appears on.
  - The limitcheck and VM errors when using a PS printer driver are thought to be the lack of memory space. Adding the extension memory may reduce the frequency of errors.
  - Normal operation is not guaranteed if using extension memory other than OKI Data genuine.
  - Printing speed does not change after adding the extension memory.
- 1. Power off printer and remove power supply cord and printer cable.
  - *Note!* Installing options to printers while the printers are powered on may cause a problem with the printers.



2. Loose 2 screws on the upper and lower area and open the gate side of printer.



3. Before taking a memory out of bag, remove the electric static by bringing the bag into contact with the metal part of printer.



4. Insert a memory into the slot until hearing the sound of "click".



5. Check if a memory is held at the right and left of lock lever(blue color, 2places).



6. Close the gate and tighten the screws (2 screws, upper and lower)



- Print cable Power supply cord
- 7. Plug in a power supply cord and a printer cable then press the power supply button.

8. Print the Menu Map to see if installed correctly.

Re-install if an error appears on the Menu Map.



9. Set up for the extension memory is done by a printer driver.

Do the reverse procedure from installation for removal.

### (2) Installation of Option Tray (Can hold large amount of papers)

Install the option tray where the number and kinds of papers need to be increased. Not only option tray has one layer but three layers tray, which combine into one tray. It is possible for option tray to install maximum of four layers, but five if the standard tray is included.



Installed option trays are called tray 2,3,4 and 5 from top to bottom order.



- 1. Power off printer and remove power supply cord and printer cable.
  - *Note!* Installing options to printers while the printers are powered on may cause a problem with the printers.


2. Put the bottom surface of printer on the tray 2 aligning the protrusion with the cut on the bottom.

*Note!* The printer weighs about 77 kg. Lift it by three or more persons.



3. Plug the power supply cord and the printer cable in and switch on the power supply.



4. Print a menu map to see if installed correctly.

Re-install if an error appears on the menu map.



5. Set up for the option tray by a printer driver.

Do the reverse procedure from installation for removal.

(3) Installation of Duplex-Unit

A duplex unit is used for printing both sides of papers.

**Note!** More memory is required for duplex-printing. Where the print speed become slow, the memory space lacks, either set up the print-quality "clear" or "normal" or installation of the extension memory are recommended.



1. Power off printer and remove power supply cord and printer cable.

*Note!* Installing options to printers while the printers are powered on may cause a problem with the printers.



2. Hold a knob on the left side of printer.



3. Open and remove the cover toward the direction seen in figure.

Memo: Keep it until the duplex-print unit is removed.



4. Make sure that the rail posts on both sides of duplex-print unit are locked.



5. Insert the duplex-print unit into the printer from the left side of printer.



6. Plug the power supply cord and the printer cable in and switch on the power supply.



7. Print a menu map to see if installed correctly.

Re-install if an error appears on the menu map.



8. Set up for duplex-print unit on the icon.

Removal of Duplex- Print Unit

1. Turn off the power .



2. Press down the lever on the right side of unit.



3. Hold the lever (both sides) and pull the unit until it stops. Remove it with holding unit up-wards.



Memo: Install the cover, which is held in custody after the removal of duplex-print unit.

(4) Installation of internal hard disk

Install internal hard disk for the following occasions

- When authentication, validation, buffer printing and saving the data are necessary
- When PDF direct printing is necessary
- When adding Adobe Type 1 is necessary
- When "Collate Error" appears
- When Print Job Accounting (option) is used
- *Note!* Contact with a maker for download application and compatibility prior to download a font.



*Memo* The hard disk is divided into three partitions such as "PCL", "SHARING" and "PSE", and each partition size is allocated as below.

PCL	20%
SHARING	50%
PSE	30%

- 1. Power off printer and remove power supply cord and printer cable.
  - *Note!* Installing options to printers while the printers are powered on may cause a problem with the printers.



2. Loose 2 screws on the upper and lower area and open the gate side of printer.



3. Hold a lock lever of internal hard disk.



4. Set an internal hard disk fitting to "HDD" line.



5. Fold the lock lever until hearing a sound of "click".



6. Close the gate and tighten the screws (2 places).



7. Plug the power supply cord and the printer cable in and switch on the power supply.



8. Print a menu map to see if installed correctly.

Re-install if an error appears on the menu map.



9. Set up the internal hard disk by a printer driver.

Do the reverse procedure from installation for removal.

3.5.4 Checking of Optional-Component Recognition

Please refer to "3.6 Menu Map Printing" to print MenuMap to confirm that options are correctly installed.

(1) Checking for Proper Extension Memory Recognition

Check Information Contained in MenuMap

Check the total memory size appearing at Total Memory Size on system information.



(2) Checking for Proper Second Tray Recognition

<Checking for Proper Second Tray Recognition> Check Information Contained in MenuMap Check Tray 2 is in the header part.



(3) Checking for Proper Duplex Unit Recognition

<Checking for Proper Duplex Unit Recognition> Check Information Contained in MenuMap Check [Duplex printing : installed] is in the header of MenuMap.

Configuration C9800G	Braining Strett Rest Strett Strett Rest Strett Rest Strett Rest Strett Rest Strett Strett Strett Rest Strett Strett Strett Strett Strett Strett Strett	A start a factorial start a fac
Device Setup: (3640A3) Publish Direct: Yes Publish Print Queue: Yes Publish Hold Queue: Yes Personality: Auto <u>Copies: 1</u> Duplex: On Output Bin: Face Down	The Mark of the Section of the Secti	ra international de la construcción de la construcc

#### 3.6 MenuMap Printing

Make sure that the printer operates normally.

- (1) Place A4 sized papers on the tray.
- (2) Check if [READY TO PRINT] appears on the map.
- (3) Press the button version several times and select [PRINT PAGE] for C9800 and [PRINT PRINTER INFORMATION] for C9600, then press ENTER .
- (4) Press the button value and select [Network Information] for C9800 and [Contents of Information] for C9600 and press ENTER ().
- (5) Press the "ENTER" () switch.

Menu map printing is started. (3 pages for C9800 and 2 pages for C9600)

(Sample) In case of C9800



(Sample) In case of C9600



- 3.7 How to Connect
- (1) Procedure for LAN cable
  - 1. Prepare the LAN cable.



2. Turn off the printer and personal computer and remove the prevention cover for a wrong plug inserted into the network interface connector of the printer.

*Note!* Never discard a prevention cover. Keep plugging it in when not installed.



3. As seen in figure below, make a circle with a straight cable, which is about 3cm from the connector of printer.



4. Connect a straight cable into the network interface connector of the printer.



#### (2) USB Connection

- 1. Prepare a USB cable.
  - *Note!* No cables are included with the product. Prepare a cable.
    - A cable to be prepared must be a USB cable.
    - For connecting the printer in USB 2.0 Hi-Speed mode, use a Hi-Speed USB cable.



2. Power off printer and personal computer

*Memo* The USB cable can be plugged in and off with the printer powered on. For the purpose of printer driver and USB driver installation to be performed later, power off the printer.



- 3. Connect personal computer and printer
  - (1) Plug a prepared USB cable in the USB interface connector of the printer.
  - (2) Plug the cable in the USB interface connector of the personal computer.
  - *Note!* Be careful not to plug the USB cable in the network interface connectors; a problem with the printer may result.



- (3) Parallel Connection
  - 1. Prepare a parallel cable.



2. Power off Printer and Personal Computer



- 3. Connect Personal Computer and Printer
  - (1) Connect a parallel cable into a parallel interface connector of printer and use metal fittings to secure the cable.
  - (2) Connect a parallel cable into a parallel interface connector of PC and use screw to secure the cable.



### 3.8 Checking of User Paper

Load the paper in printers used by users, select the settings at MEIDA TYPE and MEDIA WEIGHT and print MenuMap and Demo Page to check no occurrence of peeled off toner.

Types	Weight	Setting values o pan	Setting * <sup>2</sup> for [Media weight] of the		
		Media weight	Media type *1	printer driver	
Plain paper*3	$17 \le W < 18$ lb (64 $\le W < 68g/m^2$ )	Light		Light	
	$18 \le W < 20 \text{ lb} (68 \le W < 75g/m^2)$	Medium Light			
	$20 \le W \le 28$ lb ( $75 \le W \le 105g/m^2$ )	Medium		Medium	
	$28 < W \le 32$ lb (105 < W $\le 120g/m^2$ )	Medium Heavy	Plain	Heavy	
	$32 < W \le 34$ lb (120 < W $\le 128$ g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Heavy			
	$34 < W \le 50 \text{ lb} (128 < W \le 188g/m^2)$	Ultra Heavy		Ultra heavy	
	$50 < W \le 54$ lb (188 < W $\le 205g/m^2$ )	Special Heavy			
Postcard*4	-	-	-	-	
Envelope*4	-	-	-	-	
Label paper	Less than 0.1-0.17mm	Light ~ Heavy		Label paper 1	
	0.17-0.2mm	Ultra Heavy ~		Label paper 2	
Transparency	-	-	Transparency	Transparency	
* <sup>5</sup> film			film	film	

\*1 : [Light] is set as factory-default of media type.

\*2 : Media weight and type can be set by the operation panel and the printer driver. The printer driver takes priority if it is set in the printer driver. Images are printed out by the setting of the operation panel when [Auto selection] is set in [Feed tray] or [Printer setting] is set in [Media weight].

- \*3 : The ream weight of the paper for duplex print is 65-90kg (75-120g/m<sup>2</sup>).
- \*4 : It is unnecessary for postcards and envelopes to set media weight and type.
- \*5 : Only media type is set for Transparency film. It is not required to set media weight.
- *Memo* Print speed decelerates when [Ultra heavy] of media weight or [Label paper], [Transparency film] of media type is set.

### 4. PARTS REPLACEMENT

This section describes the parts in the field, assembly and the procedures to replace the parts, assembly and unit. Note that only the disassembling procedures are described to replace parts. To assemble parts, just follow the steps in reverse order of disassembling.

#### 4.1 Precautions When Replacing Parts

- (1) ALWAYS unplugging the AC cable and interface cables before replacing parts.
  - (a) ALWAYS perform the following procedures when unplugging the AC cable.
    - ① Press the shutdown button on the operator panel. When the printer is ready to be powered off, turn off the power switch of the printer.
    - ② Unplug the AC inlet plug of the AC cable from the AC receptacle.
    - ③ Unplug the AC cable and disconnect the interface cables from the printer.
  - (b) ALWAYS perform the following procedures to reconnect the printer.
    - ① Connect the AC cable and interface cables to the printer.
    - ② Connect the AC inlet plug into the AC receptacle.
    - ④ Turn ON "I" the power of the printer.



- (2) NEVER disassemble the printer when it is operating normally.
- (3) When disassembling the Assy, disassemble only the minimum necessary. NEVER remove any parts other than those indicated in the Parts Replacement Procedures.
- (4) Only use designated Maintenance Tools.
- (5) Disassemble the parts according to the order instructed. Failure to do so may result in damaging the parts.
- (6) Temporarily screw back on the screw, collar and other small parts on it's original location, to prevent losing these parts.
- (7) NEVER wear gloves when handling the micro processor, ROM, RAM and other IC parts or the circuit PCB, since gloves may generate static electricity.
- (8) NEVER place the printer PCB directly on the unit or floor.

#### [Maintenance Tools ]

The tools necessary to replace the printed circuit board (PCB) and unit are indicated in Table 4-1.

No.	o. Maintenance Tools		Quantity	Purpose	Remarks
1		No. 1-100 ⊕ Screw Driver	1	2-2.5 mm screw	
2		No. 2-200 ⊕ Magnetic Screw Driver	1	3-5 mm screw	
3		No. 3-100 Screw Driver	1		
4		No. 5-200 Screw Driver	1		
5		Digital Multimeter	1		
6		Pliers	1		
7		Portable Vacuum Cleaner	1		
8		LED Head Cleaner P/N 4PB4083-2248P001	1	LED Head Cleaner	
9		High Voltage Probe	1		
10		Cut-Sheet Film (Maintenance) 42404301	1	Paper Thickness Sensor for Adjustment Transparency Sheet	
11		<ul> <li>Micro-Driver</li> <li>2.0mm</li> </ul>	1	Paper Thickness for Adjustment	

Table 4-1 Maintenance Tools

# 4.2 Parts Layout

MAIN



Printer Unit - (120V) (1/2)



Printer Unit - (120V) (2/2)



Plate-Assy-Power\_100V/120V Plate-Assy-Power\_230V



Base-Assy (1/2)



Base-Assy (2/2)



Side-R-Assy



Side-F-Assy



## Duct-Drive-Assy



## FDR-Unit-Regist



### FDR-Unit-MPT



## Eject-Assy



Plate-Top-Assy



Job-Offset-Assy



## Basket-Assy



### 4.3 Parts Replacement Method

This section describes the procedures to replace the parts and assembly indicated in the disassembly diagram.

C9800/C9600 —	Cover-Rear / Cover-Side(R) / Cover-Side(R) Rear (4.3.1)			
	Cover-Side(L) / Cover Assy-Front (4.3	Cover-Side(L) / Cover Assy-Front (4.3.2)		
	Stacker Assy-FU (4.3.3)			
	Cover Assy-OP Panel / Cover-Guard(R) / Cover- Guard(Front) / Cover- Guard(L) (4.3.4)	OP Board (4.3.5)		
	Cover Assy-Top (4.3.6)			
	FAN-PCB-Assy / CU-Board-Assy / S2V-PU-Board (4.3.7)			
	Job-Offset-Assy / Basket-Assy (4.3.8)	Plate Top Assy (4.3.9)		
	Eject-Assy (4.3.10)			
	Motor-Pulse-Belt / Sensor-Regist-Assy (4.3.11)			
	FDR Unit-MPT (4.3.12)	FDR Unit-Regist (4.3.13)		
	Duct-Assy (4.3.14)	HV-Assy (4.3.15)		
	Power Unit (4.3.16)			
	— Low Voltage Power Source Assy and Motor-FAN (4.3.17)			
	—— Belt-Assy (4.3.18)			
	Fuser Unit-LBT (4.3.19)			
	Unit-Duplex (4.3.20)			
	Paper Feed Roller (4.3.21)			

- 4.3.1 Cover-Rear, Cover-Side (R), and Cover-Side (R) Rear
  - (1) Open Cover Assy-Top ①.
  - (2) Unscrew the 5 screws (2), then remove Cover-Rear (3).
  - (3) Unscrew the 2 screws (4), then remove Cover-Side (R) (5) with it warped.
  - (4) Unscrew the screws (6), then remove Cover-Side (R) Rear (7).



- 4.3.2 Cover-Side (L) and Cover Assy-Front
  - (1) Open Cover Assy-Top ①.
  - (2) Unscrew the 4 screws (2), then remove the Cover-Side (L) (3).
  - (3) Open the Cover Assy-Front (4) by 90°, unscrew the 2 screws (5), then slide the Assy to the side and remove.



- 4.3.3 Stacker Assy-FU
  - (1) Open Cover Assy-Top ①.
  - (2) Open Stacker Assy-FU ②, then remove the 2 stoppers ③. Push these to one side, remove the post, then remove the Stacker Assy-FU ②.
  - (3) Open the Stacker Assy-FU ③. Move the two stoppers ④ sideways and take them off. Remove the Stacker Assy-FU ③.



- 4.3.4 Cover Assy-OP Panel, Cover-Guard (R), Cover-Guard (Front) and Cover-Guard (L)
  - (1) Open Cover Assy-Top ①, then lift Basket-Assy ②.
  - (2) Remove Cover Assy-OP Panel ③ from its supporting point.
  - (3) Unscrew screw (4), remove the hinges, and then remove Cover-Guard (R) (5).
  - (4) Unscrew 2 screws (6), then remove Cover-Guard (Front) (7).
  - (5) Unscrew 2 screw (8), then remove the 2 hinges and remove the Cover-Guard (L) (9).


## 4.3.5 OP PCB

- (1) Remove the Cover Assy-OP Panel. (Refer to Section 4.3.4)
- (2) Remove Cover-OP Panel (2) from Frame-OP-Panel (1).
- (3) Unscrew the 2 screws (3), then remove hinge (R) (4) and Cover Hinge (R) (5).
- (4) Unscrew 2 screws (6), then remove the Hinge (L)(7), Cover-Hinge (L)(8) and Plate-Shield (OP) (9).
- (5) Remove Cover-LCD (10), Button-key (11), and Lens-LED (12), then remove the OP PCB (13).



- 4.3.6 Cover Assy-Top
  - (1) Open Cover Assy-Top (1).
  - (2) Unscrew screw (2), then remove the Cover-Duct (L) (3).
  - (3) Unscrew 8 screws (4), then remove the 3 hinges and the Cover Assy-Top (1).



### 4.3.7 FAN-PCB-Assy, CU-Board-Assy and S2V-PU-Board

- (1) Open the Cover Assy-Top.
- (2) Remove the covers concerned. (Refer to Section 4.3.2)
- (3) Remove the connector, then Remove FAN-PCB-Assy ①.
- (4) Unscrew the (2) screws, remove the Plate-Shield-Assy (3), then remove the connector.
- (5) Unscrew 7 screws (4), then remove CU-Board-Assy (5).
- (6) Disconnect all 17 Connectors, then unscrew 4 screws (6), and remove S2V-PU-Board (7).
- (7) Unscrew 9 screws (8), remove the Plate-Shield-Box-Assy (9), then remove all the connectors.



#### Cover-Screw

Depending on production lot, the printer may have the Cover-Screws (protection cover for protruding screws) in the locations below. Before disassembling the printer, remove the Duplex Unit and check to see if the Cover-Screws (black molding) are installed on the reverse side of the Plate-HV. If they are, be careful when removing them.

A Cover-Screw is only fit onto each screw and not fastened. If the screw is loosened, the Cover-Screw will come off. When installing the Cover-Screw, make sure that the location is correct. Push the Cover-Screw onto the screw.

The Cover-Screws are not a functional part but a protector to prevent damage during installation of the Duplex Unit. Install the cover-screw from the other side in the screw in one place in the Sensor-Regist-

Assy installation part and two places in the abandonment toner motor installation part. Do not lose the cover screw because it comes off when the screw in this part is detached. ت 🕲 ۲ 0 Ę, 6 O (0 0 0 ംം 🕲 🖸 മറ C ်ဝ Ø <u>Cover</u>-Screw  $\square$ e View of Reverse Side of Plate-HV from the direction of inserting the Duplex Unit

- 4.3.8 Job-Offset-Assy and Basket-Assy
  - (1) Open the Cover Assy-Top.
  - (2) Unscrew screw ①, remove Frame-Duct ②, then remove the connector (remove the connector through the shaft)
  - (3) Remove the 2 hinges, then remove the Job-Offset-Assy (3), and disconnect the connector.
  - (4) Unscrew 2 screws ④, then remove the 2 hinges, and remove the Cover Assy-Top (Sub)
     ⑤.
  - (5) Remove the six screws (6) of the Guide-Link-R and the three screws (7) of the Guide-Link-L. Remove the Plate-Top and the Basket Assy (8) with their interlock.
  - (6) Remove the 2 hinges, then remove the Cover Assy-Top (Sub) (9)
  - (7) Remove the Side Cover (L) Rear 10.
  - (8) Remove the E-ring (1), unscrew 2 screws (2), then remove the Plate-Support (Top) (3), Collar (4), Shaft-Top (A) (5), Spring-Torsion-Top (L) (6), Spring-Torsion-Top (B) (7).
  - (9) Unscrew 3 screws (18), then remove the Gear-Assy-L (19).
  - (10) Unscrew 3 screws 20, then remove Gear-Assy-R 21.
  - (11) Remove the high toner Assy tube @, then remove Basket-Assy @.



- 4.3.9 Plate Top Assy
  - (1) Remove Job-Offset-Assy/Basket-Assy. (Refer to Section 4.3.6)
  - (2) Lift back Plate-Top Assy (1), then unscrew 2 screws (2).
  - (3) Lift forward Plate-Top Assy (1), then unscrew 3 screws (3) and remove Plate-Dumper-Assy (R)(4).
  - (4) Unscrew 3 screws (5), then remove Plate-Dumper-Assy (L) (6).
  - (5) Remove Shaft-Top ⑦, Spring-Torsion-BAS (L) ⑧, and Spring-Torsion-Top-R ⑨, then remove Plate-Top Assy ①.



# 4.3.10 Eject-Assy

- (1) Remove the 7 hinges then remove Cover-Board (1).
- (2) Remove the 13 connectors, and unscrew the 2 screws ②. Then remove the 3 hinges and remove the Eject-Assy ③.



- 4.3.11 Motor-Pulse-Belt and Sensor-Resist-Assy
  - (1) Unscrew the 2 screws (1), then remove the 4-pin connector and remove the Motor-Pulse-Belt (2).
  - (2) Unscrew 7 screws (3), then remove the 3 connectors (2-pin, 14-pin, 3-pin), and remove the Sensor-Resist-Assy (4).



#### Cover-Screw

Depending on production lot, the printer may have the Cover-Screws (protection cover for protruding screws) in the locations below. Before disassembling the printer, remove the Duplex Unit and check to see if the Cover-Screws (black molding) are installed on the reverse side of the Plate-HV. If they are, be careful when removing them.

A Cover-Screw is only fit onto each screw and not fastened. If the screw is loosened, the Cover-Screw will come off. When installing the Cover-Screw, make sure that the location is correct. Push the Cover-Screw onto the screw.

The Cover-Screws are not a functional part but a protector to prevent damage during installation of the Duplex Unit. Install the cover-screw from the other side in the screw in one place in the Sensor-Regist-

Assy installation part and two places in the abandonment toner motor installation part. Do not lose the cover screw because it comes off when the screw in this part is detached. ت 🕲 ۲ 0 Ę, 6 O (0 0 0 ംം 🕲 🖸 മറ Q ်ဝ Ø <u>Cover</u>-Screw  $\square$ e View of Reverse Side of Plate-HV from the direction of inserting the Duplex Unit

## 4.3.12 FDR Unit-MPT

- (1) Open the Cover Assy-Top.
- (2) Remove the Cover (1) and remove the two connectors (Pin  $\bullet$  and Pin 2).
- (3) Open the FDR Unit-MPT 3 and remove the two screws 2 fastening the stays on both sides.
- (4) Further open the FDR Unit-MPT ③ and remove the FDR Unit-MPT ③ from the support in two places.



## 4.3.13 FDR Unit-Resist

- (1) Remove the FDR Unit-MPT. (Refer to Section 4.3.12)
- (2) Unscrew the 4 screws ① and disconnect connector ②, then remove Plate Assy-MPT Lock ③.
- (3) Open the Cover-Guide-1st-Assy ④ in the arrow direction.
- (4) Unscrew 2 screws (5), then remove FDR Unit-Resist (6).



### 4.3.14 Duct Assy

- (1) Remove the hinge, then remove Cover-Middle (1).
- (2) Remove the hinge, then remove Guide Tube (L) 2.
- (3) Unscrew 2 screws (3), then remove Duct-Assy-Toner (4).
- (4) Unscrew screw (5), then remove Gear-Duct-B-Assy (6).
- (5) Unscrew screw (7), then remove Gear-Duct-ID Assy (8).
- (6) Unscrew 6 screws (9), then remove Duct-Drive-Assy (10).

[Precautions in Removal]

When removing the Duct-Drive-Assy (10), be sure to read 4.3.11 "Cover-Screw."



### 4.3.15 HV-Assy

- (1) Open the Cover Assy-Top, then remove the Belt-Assy.
- (2) Remove the Cover-Middle. (Refer to Section 4.3.14)
- (2) Unscrew screw (1), then remove Cover-HV-Assy (2).
- (3) Remove the 2 connectors and unscrew the 2 screws (3), then remove HV-Assy (4).
- (4) Remove the 2 hinges, then remove Bracket-HV-Assy (5).



For ODA version

\* Be careful to change the high-voltage power supply of 600dpi device due to different high-voltage power supply based on a destibation.

Standard device : 43130501 Specified destination (for AB) : 42426501

## 4.3.16 Power Unit

- (1) Remove the Cover-Rear. (Refer to Section 4.3.1)
- (2) Unscrew the 12 screws (1), disconnect all connectors, pull out the lever then remove the Power Unit (2).



- 4.3.17 Low Voltage Power Source Assy and Motor-FAN
  - (1) Remove the Power Unit. (Refer to Section 4.3.16)
  - (2) Unscrew the 3 screws ①, then remove the low Voltage Power Source Assy ②, and Film-Insulation ③.
  - (3) Unscrew the 2 screws (4), then remove the connector and Motor-FAN (5).



# 4.3.18 Belt-Assy

- (1) Open the Cover Assy-Top  $\bigcirc$ .
- (2) Remove ID Unit 2.
- (3) Lift up the 2 lock levers toward the arrow, then remove the Belt-Assy 3.
   Remove Belt-Assy 3 by lifting handle 4, then remove along with handle 5.



Oki Data CONFIDENTIAL

# 4.3.19 Fuser Unit-LBT

- (1) Open Cover Assy-Top ①.
- (2) Lift the lock lever toward the arrow, then remove the Fuser Unit-LBT 2.



# 4.3.20 Unit-Duplex

(1) While opening the lever, draw out the Unit-Duplex (1).



# 4.3.21 Paper Feed Roller

- (1) Open the tray 1 side cover 1 and the paper guide 2.
- (2) Pull out Tray ③.
- (3) Pull outward the latches of the 3 paper feed rollers (4), and remove from the shaft.



### 4.3.22 MPT Feed Roller

- (1) Open the Multipurpose Tray ①, push the lever in the arrow direction and remove the Multipurpose Tray ①.
- (2) Remove the cover 2.
- (3) While opening the claw of the Feed Roller (3) outward, slide the roller to the left and remove it.
- (4) Open the cover (4).
- (5) While opening the claw of the Feed Roller (5) outward, slide the roller to the left and remove it.



# 5. MAINTENANCE / ADJUSTMENTS

The printer is adjusted by key operation on the Operator Panel.

The C9800/C9600 comes with a Maintenance Menu in the usual menu. Select the menu according to the items to adjust and the purpose of adjustment.

# 5.0 System Maintenance Menu

This menu is launched by turning on the power source while keeping the [Menu+]+[Menu-]+[Help] switches pressed.

The menu display is only available in English regardless of destination.

Note This menu can be modified according to the destination, etc. Therefore, it is not open (closed) to the end user.

							-
Category	Item	Value	DF	Old Menu	Function	Valid	Save
System Maintenance	OKI USER	ODA OEL APS JP1 JPOEM1 OEMA OEMI	*	"SYSTEM MAINTENANCE MENU" - "OKIUSER" - "OKIUSER"	Set the destination. JPOEM1: Japan OEM OEMA: A4 Default Overseas OEM OEML : Letter Default Overseas OEM Automatically reboot after escaping from the menu. The default value for non-PS models is JP1.	RB	-
	Maintenance Menu	NEXT			This displays the menu to initialize the harddisk and Flash ROM.		
	Maintenance Print Menu	Enable Disable	*		This switches whether to Show/Hide the Print Information — ID Check Pattern and Engine Status of the Function Menu. If this item is disabled, the Print Information — ID Check Pattern and Engine Status of the Function Menu is never displayed. The printer is restarted after the settings are modified and escaping from the menu.	ET	-
	Print Page Count	Enable Disable	*	"SYSTEM MAINTENANCE MENU" - "PAGE CNT PRINT" - "PAGE CNT PRINT"	This sets whether to Show/Hide the display of the "Functions"- "Configuration" - "Print Page Count"-"Total Page".	ET	-
	Personality	NEXT			This displays the menu to edit the default PDL language supported according to destination.		
	Diagnostic Mode			"SYSTEM MAINTENANCE MENU"- "DIAGNOSTIC MODE XX.XX"	This goes to the engine s self- diagnosis mode.	ET	-

#### Table 5-0. Maintenance Menu Display Table (1/2)

Category	Item	Value	DF	Old Menu	Function	Valid	Save
Maintenance Menu	Format HDD	Execute	-	SYSTEM MAINENANCE MENU — MAINTENANCE MENU — HDD INITIALIZE	Initialize the HDD. When executed it will escape from the menu and start initializing the HDD. [Display Condition] ¥Mount HDD ( Boot Menu - Storage Setup - Enable Initialization Enable, Boot Menu - Storage Setup - Enable HDD Yes)	ET	-
	Format Flash ROM	NEXT	-	SYSTEM MAINENANCE MENU - MAINTENANCE MENU — FLASH INITIALIZE	This displays the menu to initialize the Flash ROM.	RB	-
	Reset EEPROM	Execute	-	SYSTEM MAINENANCE MENU - MAINTENANCE MENU — MENU RESET	This resets the EEPROM details to the factory preset (factory default) value. It automatically reboots after the settings are made and applied. * Some special items are not initialized.	RB	-
	Reset Parameter	Execute	-		This resets the EEPROM details to the factory preset (factory default) value. At that time, the OEM related settings that are not initialized with Reset EEPROM will also be initialized. It automatically reboots after the settings are made and applied. * Some of the PU, network, etc. cannot be initialized.	RB	-
Personality	IBM PPR III XL	Enable Disable	*E *J	SYSTEM MAINENANCE MENU - PERONALITY — IBM PPR III XL	Changes the default PDL language supported according to the destination. The PDL language disabled from this menu will no longer be displayed on the Print Setup — Personality		-
	EPSON FX	Enable Disable	*E *J	SYSTEM MAINENANCE MENU - PERONSALITY — EPSON fx	of the Function menu. When receiving print data in the disabled PDL language, display INVALID DATA and dispose the incoming data. (HP-GL/2 is currently under		
	HP-GL/2	Enable Disable	*JE	SYSTEM MAINENANCE MENU - PERSONALITY — hp-gl/2	development and there are no plans scheduled for application for the product). PDF requires Adobe Postscript, therefore, it is not possible to turn PDF ON/OFF by itself (if Adobe Postscript is DISABLED, the PDF Function will also be DISABLED). It is not possible to DISABLE Adobe Postscript and PDF with PX711/713. (It shall be usually used in the ENABLE state. Though DISABLE is set the incoming data will still be processed. It has been incorporated for future extension purposes.)		
Format Flash ROM	Slot 0	Execute	-		Initialize the Flash ROM. Escape the menu to execute, then start formatting the Flash device mounted on the resident (onboard).	ET	-
	Slot 1	Execute	-		Initialize the Flash ROM. Escape the menu to execute, then start formatting the Flash device mounted on the wireless LAN (Optional).	ET	-

Table 5.0. Maintenance Menu Display Table $(Z/Z)$	Table 5	5-0.	Maintenance	Menu	Display	Table	(2/2)
---	---------	------	-------------	------	---------	-------	-------

During the Engine Self-Diagnosis Mode, switch operations and the LCD display is instructed by the engine firmware, therefore, it will vary from the specifications of the controller firmware operations. Note that the Engine Self-Diagnosis Mode can also be executed in the state with the controller PCD removed.

For details, accordingly refer to the Engine Specifications Manual.

### 5.0.1 ID Check Pattern Print ("TEST PRINT MENU" Item)

This pattern can be used to investigate the cause (plain identification of problem or check cycle of problem) resulting from the ID or LED head. CMYK are each composed of a 20% duty pattern. (printing 2 sheets)

Test pattern printing procedure

- 1. Choose the "Maintenance Print Menu" in the System Maintenance Menu and then choose "Enable." Reboot the printer.
- 2. Press "Menuŕ" button once to display "Function Menu" and choose "Print Information" and then "ID Check Pattern."
  - Vertical Black/White Lines (Vertical Black/White Lines)
  - Vertical Black/White Band (Vertical Black/White Band)
  - Horizontal Black/White Lines

(Horitzontal Black/White Lines) (Horitzontal Black/White Band)

Horizontal Black/White Band (

Print pattern (Print Pattern):





# 5.1 Maintenance Menu and Its Function

5.1.1 Maintenance Menu

### 5.1.2 Engine Maintenance Mode

Engine maintenance mode is a media conveyor mode that assists confirmation of the basic operations of the check and print system.

### 5.1.2.1 Operation Panel

Instructions on self-diagnosis operations is based on the following Operation Panel layout, as a prerequisite.



5.1.2.2 Regular Self-Diagnosis Mode (Level 1)

The Regular Self-Diagnosis Mode menu is as follows.

- SWITCH SCAN
- MOTOR & CLUTCH TEST
- TEST PRINT
- REG ADJ TEST
- DENSITY ADJ TEST
- DENSITY CALIBRATION
- MEDIA WEIGHT ADJ PA
- FACTORY MODE SET
- SENSOR SETTING
- NV-RAM INITIAL
- CONSUMABLE STATUS
- PRINTER STATUS
- LED HEAD DATA
- GRAPHIC PANEL ADJUST
- 5.1.2.2.1 How to Enter Self-Diagnosis Mode (Level 1)
  - 1. Press the [MENU+], [MENU-] and [HELP] keys at the same time when turning ON the power to go to the System Maintenance Mode.
  - 2. Press the [MENU+] and [MENU-] key until the "DIAGNOSTIC MODE" is displayed.

DIAGNOSTIC N	10DE	
XX.XX.XX	S-MODE	

- 3. "Diagnostic Mode XX.XX.XX" appears on the LCD panel. The XX.XX.XX stands for the version of the ROM. At the bottom right the setting of the "Factory Working Mode" is displayed. This is usually "S-MODE".
- 4. Press the [MENU+] or [MENU-] key to go to each self-diagnostic step. (The menu item rotates by pressing the [MENU+] or [MENU-] keys)
- 5.1.2.2.2 Escape from Self-Diagnosis Mode
  - 1. Turn OFF the power then re-turn it ON after 10 seconds.

#### 5.1.2.3 Switch Scan Test

This self-diagnosis is sued to check the input sensor and switch.



- Keep the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys pressed until [SWITCH SCAN] appears at the top of the display and operations goes into the regular diagnosis mode. (The [MENU+] key = Increment Test Item / the [MENU-] key = Decrement Test Item.)
- 2. The following message appears by pressing [ENTER]

SWITCH SCAN PAPER ROUTE: PU

3. Keep the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys pressed until the item that applies to the unit to test from Table 5-1-1 appears, at the top of the display.

Press the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys. The [MENU+] key = Increment Test Item / the [MENU-] key = Decrement Test Item.

```
PAPER ROUTE: PU
1=H 2=L 3=H 4=L
```

4. The test is started by pressing the [ENTER] key. The top of the display starts blinking and the applicable unit number (1-4) and the current state appears.

Operate each unit (Figure 5-1). Display the operations on each respective applicable LCD area. (The display varies according to each sensor. For details refer to Table 5-1-1.)

- 5. Press the [CANCEL] or [BACK] key to return to state 2.
- 6. Accordingly repeat Steps 2 to 4.
- 7. To end the test press the [BACK] key. (Return to state 1)



Table 5-1-1	Switch Scan	Details
	Ownon Ooun	Dotano

	Top of the	1		2		3		4	
No.	Display	Detail	Display	Detail	Display	Detail	Display	Detail	Display
1	PAPER ROUTE	IN1 Sns	H:OFF	IN2 Sns	H:OFF	WR Sns	H:OFF	Exit Sns	H:OFF
2	PAPER ROUTE	IN1 Sns	H:OFF	IN2 Sns	H:OFF	WR Sns	H:OFF		
3	TONER SENS	Toner-K Sns	L:ON H:ON L:OFF	Toner-Y Sns	L:ON H:ON L:OFF	Toner-M Sns	L:ON H:ON L:OFF	Toner-C Sns	H:ON L:OFF
4	COVER	Cover-Upper	H:Open	Cover-Left	H:Open	Cover-Face Up	H:Open		
5	STKF_FD_FU	Stacker Full Sns	H:Full	Stacker Full Sns	H:Full	Job Offset	H:ON	JobOffset Home	H:ON
6	JOBOFFHOME	(Face down)	L:Empty	(Face up)	L:Empty	Paper-End Sns	L:OFF	Position Sns	L:OFF
0	DENS_WEIGHT	Sns	***H	Sns	***H			Sns	Fiequeilcy
7	HEATER THERMISTER	Upper-Center- Thermister	AD Value: ***H	Lower-Center- Thermister	AD Value: ***H	Upper-Side- Thermister	AD Value: ***H	Detect-ambient temperature- Thermister	AD Value: ***H
8	HUM_TEMP_OHP	Hum Sns	AD Value: ***H	Temperture-Sns	AD Value: ***H	OHP Sns	AD Value: ***H		
9	ID UP/DOWN							ID UpDown Sns	H:Up L:Down
10	RFID COLOR	TAG-K presence	UID:****H	TAG-Y presence	UID:****H	TAG-M presence	UID:****H	TAG-C presence	UID:****H
11	DRUM PHASE	K-Drum Phase Sns	Port Level	Y-Drum Phase Sns	Port Level H, L	M-Drum Phase	Port Level	C-Drum Phase Sns	Port Level H, L
12	F-RLS SLK BLT	Fuser Release	H:ON	Paper Slack	H:ON	Belt Hole IC	H:ON	Waste Toner	H:ON
13	DISTNR FULL BOX BOXSP	Disposal toner	H:ON L:OFF	Disposal toner box	H:Not installed		2.011		2.011
		K.T. 0. 1	<b>D</b> 11 1	XT 0 1	L:Installed	M.T. 0. 1	<b>D</b> 11 1	0.7. 0. 1	<b>D</b> 11 1
14	KY_MC	K-Toner Supply Sns	H, L	Y-Toner Supply Sns	Port Level H, L	Sns	H, L	C- Ioner Supply Sns	Port Level H, L
15	MPT PE_ PE PE2 CV0	MPT-Paper-End Sns	Port Level H, L	MPT-Paper-End Sns 2	H:ON L:OFF	Cover-MPT	H:Open L:Close		
16	MPT HOP_HOME	MPT-Hopping Sns	H:ON L:OFF	MPT Home Position Sns	H:Open L:Close				
17	TRAY1 PE_ PNE_CVO	1st-Paper-End Sns	Port Level H. L	1st-Paper-Near- End Sns	Port Level H. L	Cover-1st	H:Open L:Close		
18	TRAY1	1st-Hopping	Port Level	1st-Lifter Sns	Port Level	1st-Feed Sns	Port Level		
19	TRAY1 CASETTE	1st-Paper Size- 1 Sw	Port Level H, L	1st-Paper Size- 2 Sw	Port Level H, L	1st-Paper Size- 3 Sw	Port Level H, L	1st-Paper Size- 4 Sw	Port Level H, L
20	TRAY2	2nd-Paper-End	Port Level	2nd-Paper-	Port Level	Cover-Open-	Port Level		-
21	PE_PNE_CVO TRAY2	Sns 2nd-Hopping	H, L Port Level	Near-End Sns 2nd-Lifter Sns	H, L Port Level	2nd Sw 2nd-Feed Sns	H, L Port Level		
	HOP_LIFT_FEED	Sns	H, L		H, L	0.15.0	H, L	0.15.0	<b>D</b> 11 1
22	SIZE	2nd-Paper Size- 1 Sw	H, L	2nd-Paper Size- 2 Sw	Port Level H, L	3 Sw	Port Level H, L	2nd-Paper Size- 4 Sw	Port Level H, L
23	TRAY3 PE PNE CVO	3rd-Paper-End	Port Level	3rd-Paper-Near-	Port Level	Cover-Open-3rd	Port Level		
24	TRAY3	3rd-Hopping	Port Level	3rd-Lifter Sns	Port Level	3rd-Feed Sns	Port Level		
25	TRAY3 CASETTE	3rd-Paper Size- 1 Sw	Port Level	3rd-Paper Size- 2 Sw	Port Level	3rd-Paper Size- 3 Sw	Port Level	3rd-Paper Size- 4 Sw	Port Level H. L
26	TRAY4 PE PNE CVO	4th-Paper-End Sns	Port Level	4th-Paper-Near- End Sns	Port Level	Cover-Open-4th	Port Level		
27		4th-Hopping	Port Level	4th-Lifter Sns	Port Level	4th-Feed Sns	Port Level		
28	TRAY4 CASETTE	4th-Paper Size-	Port Level	4th-Paper Size-	Port Level	4th-Paper Size-	Port Level	4th-Paper Size-	Port Level
29	TRAY5	5th-Paper-End	Port Level	5th-Paper-Near-	Port Level	Cover-Open-5th	Port Level	4 3W	11, L
30	TRAY5	Sns 5th-Hopping	H, L Port Level	End Sns 5th-Lifter Sns	H, L Port Level	5w 5th-Feed Sns	H, L Port Level		
01	HOP_LIFT_FEED	Sns	H, L	Eth Dener Ol	H, L	Eth Dener Ol	H, L	Eth Done Oine 1	Port Louis
31	SIZE	5in-Pape rSize- 1 Sw	H, L	2 Sw	H, L	3 Sw	H, L	Sw	H, L
32	DUP INS_ REAR_FRONT	Dup-In Sns	Port Level H, L	Dup-Rear Sns	Port Level H, L	Dup-Front Sns	Port Level H, L		

	Top of the	1		2		3		4	
No.	Display	Detail	Display	Detail	Display	Detail	Display	Detail	Display
33	DUP STACK_COVER	Dup-Stack Sns	Port Level H, L	Dup-Cover Open Sns	Port Level H, L				
34	FIN S01_S02_ S03_S04	Uper Cover Sns [PI23]	H:OPEN L:CLOSE	Front door Sns [PI22]	H:OPEN L:CLOSE	Front door SW [MS2]	H:OPEN L:CLOSE	Joint SW [MS1]	H:OPEN L:CLOSE
35	FIN S05_S06_ S07_S08	Bookbinding position Sns[PI10]	H:Paper present L:Paper absent	Processing tray Sns [PI6]	H:Paper present L:Paper absent	Entrance Sns [PI1]	H:Paper present L:Paper absent	Punch timing Sns	H:Paper present L:Paper absent
36	FIN S09_S10_ S11_S12	Bookbinding tray paper Sns [PI13]	H:Paper present L:Paper absent	Bookbinding home position Sns [PI11]	H:Home position L:Except in the home position	Bookbinding roller home position Sns [PI12]	H:Home position L:Except in the home position	Front matching home position Sns [PI4]	H:Home position L:Except in the home position
37	FIN S13_S14_ S15_S16	Rear matching home position Sns [PI5]	H:Home position L:Except in the home position	Belt home position outlet Sns [PI7]	H:Home position L:Except in the home position	Feed roller home position Sns[PI3]	H:Home position L:Except in the home position	Paddle home position [PI2]	H:Home position L:Except in the home position
38	FIN S17_S18_ S19_S20	Staple / fold motor clock [PI14]	H/L:Clock	Self prime Sns [PI21]	H:Start staple detection L:Staple absent	Staple Sns [PI20]	H:Staple absent L:Staple present	Stapler safty SW [MS3]	H:Not to drive L:Drive
39	FIN S21_S22_ S23_S24	Staple home position Sns[PI19]	H:Home position L:Except in the home position	Stapler slide home position Sns [PI18]	H:Home position L:Except in the home position	Stapler connect signal	Hconnected Lunconnected	Stack tray lift motor clock[PI17]	H/L:Clock
40	FIN S25_S26_ S27_S28	Lower stack tray Sns [PI16]	H:Lower position L:Except in the lower position	Upper stack tray Sns [PI15]	H:Upper position L:Except in the upper position	Interlevel stack tray Sns [PI24]	H:Interlevel detection L:Interlevel undetection	Paper stack tray Sns [PI9]	H:Paper detect position L:Except in the paper detect position
41	FIN S29_S30_ S31_S32	Stack tray paper Sns [PI8]	H:Paper present L:Paper absent	Punch connect signal	Hconnected Lunconnected				
42	INV IN_OUT_ EXIT_COV	Entrance Sns [FP1]	H:ON L:OFF	Outlet Sns [FP2]	H:ON L:OFF	PU→Inverter Exit Sns Signal	H:ON L:OFF	Cover open SW [FMS1]	H:Open L:Close
43	INV REMAIN_ JOINT	Lower Sns[FP3]	H:ON L:OFF	Inverter connected Sns [FP4]	H:ON L:OFF	PU→Inverter CNT2 Signal	H:ON L:OFF		
44	HALL BELT_ DT-BOX_DCT	Belt Hole IC	H:ON L:OFF	Waste Toner Box Hole IC	H:ON L:OFF	Waste Toner Hole IC	H:ON L:OFF		

# Table 5-1-2 Paper Size Detection, Various Paper Types and Bits

No.	Paper	1	2	3	4
0	No cassette	Н	Н	Н	Н
1	B5-L	L	Н	Н	Н
2	Legal 13-S	Н	L	Н	Н
3	B5-S	L	L	Н	Н
4	A4-L	Н	Н	L	Н
5	Letter-L	L	Н	L	Н
6	A5-S	Н	L	L	Н
7	A4-S	L	L	L	Н
8	B4-S	Н	Н	Н	L
9	A3-S	L	Н	Н	L
А	Legal 14-S	Н	L	Н	L
В	Executive-S	L	L	Н	L
С	A3nobi-S	Н	Н	L	L
D	Ledger-S	L	Н	L	L
E	A6-S	Н	L	L	L
F	Letter-S	L	L	L	L

### 5.1.2.4 Motor/Clutch Test

This self-diagnosis routine is used to test the motor and clutch.

1. Continue to press the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys until "MOTOR & CLUTCH TEST" appears at the top of the display and the operation enters the self-diagnosis (Level 1) mode.

The [MENU+] key = Increment Test Item / the [MENU-] key = Decrement Test Item.

2. The following message appears when the [ENTER] is pressed. The suitable location of the unit to be tested as shown in Table 5-2 will appear at the bottom of the display.

Press the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys.

The [MENU+] key = Increment Test Item / the [MENU-] key = Decrement Test Item.



- 3. Press the [ENTER] key to start the test. The name of the unit will start blinking. Then the applicable unit will drive for 10 seconds.
  - Note After driving for 10 seconds, it will return to State 2. The drive will start again by re-pressing the applicable switch.
  - To drive the applicable unit, there is a need to clear the drive limitational conditions indicated in Table 5-2. Launching a state drive that doesn't clear the limitation conditions is invalid. When this happens the clear information is displayed at the bottom of the display.
  - The clutch solenoid generally repeats ON/OFF with regular printer driver. (models that do not drive independently due to its mechanical structure will come be driven by a motor.)
- 4. Press the [CANCEL] key to stop the applicable unit drive. (maintain the display of the applicable unit, at this time)
- 5. Accordingly repeat Steps 2 to 4.
- 6. Press the [BACK] key to end the test. (Returns to state 1)



Figure 5-2 Location of Motor and Clutch

Unit Name Display	Drive Limitation	Error display	Remarks
K-ID MOTOR	-	-	-
Y-ID MOTOR	-	-	-
M-ID MOTOR	-	-	-
C-ID MOTOR	-	-	-
BELT MOTOR	-	-	-
FUSER MOTOR	-	-	-
FUSER MOTOR REVERSE	-	-	-
FUSER RLS	-	-	-
REGIST MOTOR	-	-	-
REGIST CLUTCH	-	-	-
MPT MOTOR	-	-	-
MPT LIFT UP	-	-	-
EXIT SOLENOID	-	-	-
FACEDOWN SOLENOID	-	-	-
REGISTRATION SHUTTER	-	-	-
JOB OFFSET	-	-	-
TRAY1 MOTOR	-	-	-
TRAY2 MOTOR	TRAY 2 is installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY3 MOTOR	TRAY 3 is installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY4 MOTOR	TRAY 4 is installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY5 MOTOR	TRAY 5 is installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY2 FEED MOTOR	TRAY 2 is installed and the cassette is not installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY3 FEED MOTOR	TRAY 2 is installed and the cassette is not installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY4 FEED MOTOR	TRAY 2 is installed and the cassette is not installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY5 FEED MOTOR	TRAY 2 is installed and the cassette is not installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY2 ROLLER CLUTCH	TRAY 2 is installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY3 ROLLER CLUTCH	TRAY 3 is installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY4 ROLLER CLUTCH	TRAY 4 is installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY5 ROLLER CLUTCH	TRAY 5 is installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY1 GEARED MOTOR	-	-	-
TRAY2 GEARED MOTOR	TRAY 2 is installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY3 GEARED MOTOR	TRAY 3 is installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY4 GEARED MOTOR	TRAY 4 is installed.	-	OPTION
TRAY5 GEARED MOTOR	TRAY 5 is installed.	-	OPTION
DUP MOTOR	Duplex unit is installed.	-	OPTION
DUP FAN	Duplex unit is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN TRANSFER MOTOR	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN SADDLE ROLLER	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN BUNDLE MOTOR_FWD	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN BUNDLE MOTOR_REW	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN PADDLE	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN BUNDLE ROLLER	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN SLIDE MOTOR	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN ORDER	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION

Table 3-2 Wold and Guildh Tes	Table 5-2	Motor	and	Clutch	Test
-------------------------------	-----------	-------	-----	--------	------

Unit Name Display	Drive Limitation	Error display	Remarks
FIN SHIFT MOTOR	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN STAPLE EXEC	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN SADDLE EXEC	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN SADDLE TRANSFER	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN SADDLE CLUTCH	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN PUNCH HOLE	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
FIN PUNCH REG	Finisher is installed.	-	OPTION
INV MOTOR A	Inverter is installed.	-	OPTION
INV MOTOR B	Inverter is installed.	-	OPTION
INV SEPARATER	Inverter is installed.	-	OPTION
INV PRESSURE SOLENOID	Inverter is installed.	-	OPTION
INV REGIST CLUTCH	Inverter is installed.	-	OPTION
FAN POWER	-	-	-
FAN PU-BOARD	-	-	-
FAN FUSER	-	-	-
FAN BELT	-	-	-
FAN ID	-	-	-
TONER SUPPLY K	-	-	-
TONER SUPPLY Y	-	-	-
TONER SUPPLY KY	-	-	-
TONER SUPPLY M	-	-	-
TONER SUPPLY C	-	-	-
TONER SUPPLY MC	-	-	-
DISPOSAL TONER TUBE	-	-	-
ID UP/DOWN	-	-	-
#### 5.1.2.5 Test Print

This self-diagnostic routine is used to print the test pattern in the PU. Other test patterns are stored in the controller.

- 1. Continue to press the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys until "TEST PRINT" appears at the top row of the display, and the system is in the self-diagnosis (Lever 1) mode. The [MENU+] key = Increment Test Item / the [MENU-] key = Decrement Test Item.
- 2. Press the [ENTER] key only for the setting item applied for test printing appears at the bottom of the display. Press the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys until the applicable item appears. The [MENU+] key = Increment Item / the [MENU-] key = Decrement Item. (Go to Item 5 to [Default Setting] if setting of each item is unnecessary.)
- 3. Press the [ENTER] key for the setting item to appear on the top row of the display and the setting value to appear at the bottom row of the display. Press the [MENU+] key for the setting value to increment. Press the [MENU-] key for the setting value to decrement (the final display setting value is applied). Accordingly repeat item 3.

TEST PATTERN
1

The settings shaded in are default settings.

Display	Setting value	Function
PRINT EXECUTE	_	Press [Enter] to start printing or [CANCEL] to stop printing (each page).
TEST PATTERN	0	0: Blank page
		1 to 7: See the "Test Print Pattern" table (pattern printing).
		8 to 15: Blank page
CASSETTE	TRAY1	Choose a paper feeder.
	TRAY2 *1	
	TRAY3 *1	
	TRAY4 *1	
	TRAY5 *1	
	MPT	
PAGE	0	Set the number of test print pages. Press [ONLINE] to move
		the cursor to the digit to be edited. Press [MENU_] to increase
		the set value, and [MENU_] to decrease the set value.
COLOR	ON	Choose Color or Monochrome.
	OFF	
DUPLEX *1	3 PAGES STACK	Prints on both sides of a stack of 3 sheets.
	OFF	Turns off duplex printing.
	1 PAGES STACK	Prints on both sides of one sheet.
JOB OFFSET	OFF	Turns the job offset function on and off.
	ON	
FINISHER *2	OUTPUT BIN	Choose an output bin.
	PUNCH	Turns the punch mode on and off.
	OFFSET	Turns the offset mode on and off.
	STAPLE	Choose the staple location.
	STAPLE PAGE	Set the number of sheets to be stapled (0 to 50).
	INVERT	Turns the invert mode on and off.

\*1 TRAY 2 to TRAY 5 and DUPLEX will be displayed only when their respective units are installed.

\*2 If the finisher is not installed, "OUTPUT BIN" is displayed and only the output bin is selectable.

• Presets: FACE DOWN/FACE UP Default: FACE DOWN

\* These settings are valid in the test mode only (they will not be written to the EEPROM).

## Note / \* COLOR Setting

When COLOR is on, if [ONLINE] is pressed, the settings below will appear and the print color-setting mode will be entered.

COLOR				
Y:ON	M:ON	C:ON	K:ON	

Press [ONLINE] to move the cursor to the color to be turned on or off.

Press [MENU+] or [MENU-] to turn the setting of each color on or off, respectively[OK to add?].

Press [ENTER] to exit the print color-setting mode.

\* FINISHER Setting

- (1) When "FINISHER" is shown at the bottom of the display panel, press [ENTER].
- (2) Press [MENU+] or [MENU-] until the setting item to be edited appears.
- (3) Press [ENTER]; the set value will appear at the bottom of the panel. Press [MENU+] or [MENU-] until the desired value appears. ([MENU+] increases the value and [MENU-] decreases the value.)
- (4) Press [BACK] to return to step (2) above. Press [BACK] again to return to step (1).
- (5) Repeat steps (2) to (4) as necessary.

		The settings shaded in are default settings.				
Display	Setting value	Function				
OUTPUT BIN	FACE DOWN	Printer face down				
	FINISHER UPPER BIN	Finisher upper bin				
	FINISHER LOWER BIN	Finisher lower bin				
PUNCH	OFF	Punch on/off				
	ON					
OFFSET	OFF	Offset on/off				
	ON					
STAPLE MODE	OFF	Staple mode off				
	Rear	Rear corner				
	Center	Center corner				
	Front	Front corner				
	Saddle	Saddle stitch				
STAPLE NUMBER	0	Set the number of sheets to be stapled (0 to 50). * When the staple mode is on, ÅgSTAPLE NUMBERÅh is selectable between 2 and 50.				
INVERT	OFF	Invert on/off				
	ON					

4. Operations in section 2 will execute test printing at the set value that is set in Steps 2 to 3, by pressing the [ENTER] key when the state displays "PRINT EXECUTE" at the bottom row of the display.

. . .

Press the [ENTER] key to stop test printing.

Print I	est Pattern
Pattern No.	Print pattern
0	None (blank page)
1	2 by 2
2	4 by 4
3	Horizontal line
4	Slanted line
5	Vertical line
6	Vertical band
7	Full

\_ . . \_

• The following message appears when printing.

P=*** T=***	U=*** [###]
H=***%	L=***[###]

P: Test Print Sheets (Unit: number of sheets)

- U: Upper-side Heater temperature Measurement Value[Setting] (Unit: °C)
- L: Lower-Side Heater temperature Measurement Value[Setting] (Unit: °C)
- T: Environmental Temperature Measurement Value (Unit: %)
- H: Environmental Humidity Measurement Value (Unit: %)
- Press [MENU+] key to switch the display.

```
KTR=*.**KV YTR=*.**KV
MTR=*.**KV CTR=*.**KV
```

YTR, MTR, CTR and KTR are image transfer voltage settings of each color. (Unit: KV)

• Press [MENU+] key to switch the display.

```
KR=*.**uA YR=*.**uA
MR=*.**uA CR=*.**uA
```

YR, MR, CR, and KR represent the electric current (uA) of the transfer roller for each color, respectively.

• Press [MENU+] key to switch the display.

THICK= ***	TEMP=***	
REGIST=****	EXIT=****	

THICK: Detected medium thickness (µm)

TEMP: Fusing temperature (°C)

REGIST: Constant speed of resist motor (hexadecimal)

EXIT: Constant speed of fuser motor (hexadecimal)

- 5. Accordingly repeat Steps 2 to 4.
- 6. Press the [BACK] key to end the test. (Returns to state 1)

#### 5.1.2.6 Initialize NVM

This self-diagnosis is used to initialize the nonvolatile memory.

- 1. Continue to press the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys until "NV-RAM INITIAL" appears at the top row of the display, and the system is in the self-diagnosis (Level 1) mode. The [MENU+] key = Increment Test Item / the [MENU-] key = Decrement Test Item.
- 2. When the [ENTER] key is pressed, the Table No. to be initialized appears at the bottom row of the display. There are 3 tables initialized. Press the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys until the applicable Table No. appears. The [MENU+] key = Increment Table No. / the [MENU-] key= Decrement Table No.

NV-RAM INITIAL	
INITIAL 1	

Note P Do not use INITIAL 2.

- 3. When the [ENTER] key is pressed, the "NV-RAM INITIAL" display blinks at the top row of the display. Press it for 10 consecutive seconds to initialize all items indicated in Table 5-3.
- 4. Press the [BACK] key to end the test. (Returns to state 1)

Item to Initialize	Unit	Initial Setting	Detail
K-DRUM UNIT	IMAGES	0	Total number of revolutions since the ID unit for each
Y-DRUM UNIT	IMAGES	0	color has been installed.
M-DRUM UNIT	IMAGES	0	
C-DRUM UNIT	IMAGES	0	
FUSER UNIT	PRINTS	0	Total number of revolutions since the fuser unit has been installed.
TR BELT UNIT	IMAGES	0	Total number of revolutions since the belt unit has been installed.
K-DISTNR	-	0	
Y-DISTNR	-	0	
M-DISTNR	-	0	Quantity of each color of toner to be discarded
C-DISTNR	-	0	
DISTNR CNT	-	0	Quantity of toner discarded in toner disposal
DISTNR BOX TNR CNT	-	0	Quantity of toner discarded in toner disposal or for correction (e.g., color cast, color misregistration, and density)

<b>T</b> . I. I .	- 0		1.111.1
lable	5-3	NV-KAM	Initial

#### 5.1.2.7 Consummable Parts Counter Display

This self-diagnosis is used to display the consumption status of the consumable parts of the printer.

- 1. It will go into normal self-diagnosis. Continue to press the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys until "CONSUMABLE STATUS" appears at the top row of the display. (The [MENU+] key to Increment the Test Item / the [MENU-] key to decrement the Test Item.)
- 2. After the [ENTER] key is pressed, press the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys to sequentially display the consumption status according to consumable part.

Top of the Display	Bottom of the Display	Format	Detail
K-DRUM UNIT	***** IMAGES	DEC	Indicates the total number of revolutions since the ID unit for
Y-DRUM UNIT			each color has been installed.
M-DRUM UNIT			
C-DRUM UNIT			
FUSER UNIT	****** PRINTS	DEC	Indicates how many pages have been printed since the fuser unit has been installed.
TR BELT UNIT	***** IMAGES	DEC	Indicates how many pages have been printed since the belt unit has been installed.
K-TONER	***%	DEC	Indicates what quantity of each color of toner has been consumed.
Y-TONER			* Indicates 90% when the toner level is low.
M-TONER			
C-TONER			
STAPLE UNIT	***** JOBS	DEC	Indicates how many times stapling has been performed.
PUNCH UNIT	****** PRINTS	DEC	Indicates how many times punching has been performed.
PATTING ROLLER	****** PRINTS	DEC	Indicates how many sheets have passed by the patting roller.
STAPLE CONSUMPTION	****** PIECES	DEC	Indicates how many staples have been used. * The count is reset when staples are refilled.
STAPLE UNIT REPLACE	**** TIMES	DEC	Indicates how many times the staple unit has been replaced.
PUNCH UNIT REPLACE	***** TIMES	DEC	Indicates how many times the punch unit has been replaced.

3. Press the [BACK] key to end the test. (Returns to state 1)

#### 5.1.2.8 Consumable Continual Counter Display

This self-diagnosis is used to display the consumption status of the consumable parts of the printer.

The life consumption status of consumable parts means that the counter value is not initialized though the consumable parts are replaced. It is a way to continually count the consumption level of the consumable parts of the printer.

- 1. It will go into normal self-diagnosis. Continue to press the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys until "PRINTER STATUS" appears at the top row of the display. (The [MENU+] key to Increment the Test Item / the [MENU-] key to decrement the Test Item.)
- 2. After the [ENTER] key is pressed, press the [MENU+] and [MENU-] keys to sequentially display the life consumption status according to consumable part.

3	Press the	[BACK]	kev to	end	the test	(Returns t	to state 1	)

Top of the Display	Bottom of the Display	Format	Detail
K-IMPRESSIONS	****** PRINTS	DEC	Indicates how many pages have been printed using each color.
Y-IMPRESSIONS			
M-IMPRESSIONS			
C-IMPRESSIONS			
TOTAL SHEETS FEED	****** PRINTS	DEC	Indicates the total number of sheets fed.
FINISHER TOTAL PAGE	***** PRINTS	DEC	Indicates the total number of sheets having passed by the finisher.

## 5.1.2.9 Panel Display Details

## Panel Display

Panel Display	Details	
BLANCE ERROR	Balance Error	
BELT LIFE OVER	Belt Life Over	
BELT REFLECTION ERROR	Belt Reflection Error	
BELT UNIT FUSE CUT ERROR	Belt Unit Fuse Cut Error	
BLACK DENSITY CALIB ERROR	BLACK Density Calibration Error	
BLACK DENSITY SENSOR ERROR	BLACK Density Sensor Error	
BLACK DRUM LIFE OVER	BLACK Drum Life	
BLACK DRUM NEAR LIFE	BLACK Drum Near Life Warning	
BLACK DRUM UNIT FUSE CUT ERROR	BLACK Drum Unit Fuse Cut Error	
BLACK DRUM UP/DOWN ERROR	BLACK Drum UP/DOWN Error	
BLACK IRREGULAR ERROR	BLACK Outside Detection Range Error	
BLACK LED HEAD ERROR	BLACK LED Head Error	
BLACK REGISTRATION ERROR(PX711)	BLACK Color Drift Error	
BLACK REGISTRATION OUT HORIZONTAL	BLACK Detected of Irregular Color Drift Correction Value in	
	the Main Scanning Correction	
BLACK REGISTRATION OUT LEFT	BLACK Outside Range of Correction Error (LEFT)	
BLACK REGISTRATION OUT RIGHT	BLACK Outside Range of Correction Error (RIGHT)	
BLACK SENSOR ERROR LEFT	BLACK LEFT Sensor Error	
BLACK SENSOR ERROR RIGHT	BLACK RIGHT Sensor Error	
BLACK TONER EMPTY	BLACK Toner EMPTY	
BLACK TONER LOW	BLACK Toner LOW	
BLACK TONER SENSOR ERROR	BLACK Toner Sensor Error	
BLACK ID DENSITY ERROR 1	BLACK Density Correction ID Error 1	
BLACK ID DENSITY ERROR 2	BLACK Density Correction ID Error 2	
CALIBRATION CHIP ERROR	Color Calibration Chip Correction Value Error	
CALIBRATION ERROR	Calibration Error	
COLOR DENSITY CALIB ERROR	Color Density Calibration Error	
COLOR DENSITY SENSOR ERROR	Color Density Sensor Error	
COOLING DOWN	Cooling Down	
CUSTOM DIAGNOSTICS MODE	Custom Diagnostic Mode	
CYAN DRUM LIFE OVER	CYAN Drum Life	
CYAN DRUM NEAR LIFE	CYAN Drum Near Life Warning	
CYAN DRUM UNIT FUSE CUT ERROR	CYAN Drum Unit Fuse Cut Error	
CYAN DRUM UP/DOWN ERROR	CYAN Drum UP/DOWN Error	
CYAN IRREGULAR ERROR	CYAN Detection Value Error	
CYAN LED HEAD ERROR	CYAN LED Head Error	
CYAN REGISTRATION ERROR	CYAN Color Drift Error	
CYAN REGISTRATION OUT HORIZONTAL	CYAN Detected of Irregular Color Drift Correction Value in the	
	Main Scanning Correction	
CYAN REGISTRATION OUT LEFT	CYAN Outside Range of Correction Error (LEFT)	
CYAN REGISTRATION OUT RIGHT	CYAN Outside Range of Correction Error (RIGHT)	
CYAN SENSOR ERROR LEFT	CYAN LEFT Sensor Error	
CYAN SENSOR ERROR RIGHT	CYAN RIGHT Sensor Error	
CYAN TONER EMPTY	CYAN Toner EMPTY	
CYAN TONER LOW	CYAN Toner LOW	
CYAN TONER SENSOR ERROR	CYAN Toner Sensor Error	
CYAN ID DENSITY ERROR 1	CYAN Density Correction ID Error 1	
CYAN ID DENSITY ERROR 2	CYAN Density Correction ID Error 2	
DIAGNOSTICS MODE	Engine Diagnostic Mode	
DISPOSAL TONER FULL	Disposal Toner Full	
DISPOSAL TONER NEAR FULL	Disposal Toner Near-Full	

Panel Display	Details	
DRIVE MOTOR OVER HEAT	DRIVE Motor Overheat Error	
DUPLEX I/F ERROR	DUPLEX I/F Error	
DUPLEX TYPE MISMATCH	DUPLEX Type Error	
DUPLEX UNIT OPEN(PX713)	DUPLEX Unit Open	
ENGINE BOARD FAN MOTOR ERROR	PU PCB Fan Motor Error	
ENGINE CONTROL ERROR	ENGINE Control Error	
ENGINE EEPROM ERROR	EEPROM Error	
ENGINE EEPROM MISSING	EEPROM Unmounted	
ENGINE LIFE OVER	ENGINE Life Over	
ENGINE RAM ERROR	RAM Error	
ENGINE ROM ERROR	ROM Error	
ENGINE SRAM ERROR	SRAM Error	
ENV TEMP SENSOR ERROR	Environmental Temperature Sensor Error	
FACE-UP STACKER OPEN	Face-Up Stacker Open	
FLASH HARDWARE ERROR	FLASH Hardware Error	
FLASH SOFTWARE ERROR	FLASH Software Error	
FRONT COVER OPEN(PX711)	Front Cover Open	
FUSER LIFE OVER	FUSER Life Over	
FUSER UNIT FAN MOTOR ERROR	FUSER Fan Motor Error	
FUSER UNIT FUSE CUT ERROR	Fuser Unit Fuse Cut Error	
FUSER UNIT NISMATCH	Fuser Unit Mismatch	
HOPPING ERROR DUPLEX	DUPLEX Hoping Error	
HOPPING ERROR MULTI PURPOSE FEEDER	MP-FEEDER Hoping Error	
HOPPING ERBOR TRAY1	TRAY1 Hoping Error	
HOPPING EBBOB TBAY2	TRAY2 Hoping Error	
HOPPING ERROR TRAY3	TRAY3 Hoping Error	
HOPPING ERROR TRAY4	TRAY4 Hoping Error	
HOPPING ERROR TRAY5	TRAY5 Hoping Error	
HUMIDITY SENSOR DEW ERROR	Temperature Sensor Dew Error	
HUMIDITY SENSOR ERROR	Relative Humidity Sensor Error	
INFEED:DUPLEX	DUPLEX Hoping Error	
INFEED:MP-FEEDER	MP-FEEDER Hoping Error	
INFEED:TRAY1	TRAY1 Hoping Error	
INFEED:TBAY2	TRAY2 Hoping Error	
INFEED:TRAY3	TBAY3 Hoping Error	
INFEED:TRAY4	TBAY4 Hoping Error	
INFEED:TRAY5	TRAY5 Hoping Error	
INITIALIZING	Initializing When Turning Power ON	
INITIALIZING	Initializing When OPEN/CLOSE Cover	
INITIALIZING DENSITY ADJUST	Automatic Density Correction Being Controlled	
INITIALIZING REGISTRATION ADJUST	Automatic Color Drift Correction Control	
INPATH:DUPLEX ENTRY	DUPLEX Internal Area Jam	
INPATH:DUPLEX INPUT	DUPLEX Input Area Jam	
INPATH:DUPLEX REVERSAL	DUPLEX Reversal Area Jam	
INPATHEXIT	Discharge Jam	
INPATH:FEED	Feed Jam	
INPATH:TRANSPORT	Conveyance Jam	
JAM DUPLEX ENTRY	DUPLEX Internal Area Jam	
JAM DUPLEX INPUT	DUPLEX Input Area Jam	
JAM DUPLEX REVERSAL	DUPLEX Reversal Area Jam	
JAM EXIT	Discharge Jam	
JAM FEED	Feed Jam	

Panel Display	Details	
JAM TRANSPORT	Conveyance Jam	
JOB OFFSET HOME ERROR(PX713)	Job Offset Home Error	
LED HEAD OVER HEAT	LED head Overheat Error	
LIFT ERROR TRAY1(PX713)	TRAY1 Liftup Error	
LIFT ERROR TRAY2(PX713)	TRAY2 Liftup Error	
LIFT ERROR TRAY3(PX713)	TRAY3 Liftup Error	
LIFT ERROR TRAY4(PX713)	TRAY4 Liftup Error	
LIFT ERROR TRAY5(PX713)	TRAY5 Liftup Error	
LIFT UP TRAY1(PX713)	TRAY1 Lifting UP	
LIFT UP TRAY2(PX713)	TRAY2 Lifting UP	
LIFT UP TRAY3(PX713)	TRAY3 Lifting UP	
LIFT UP TRAY4(PX713)	TRAY4 Lifting UP	
LIFT UP TRAY5(PX713)	TRAY5 Lifting UP	
LOWER HEATER HIGH TEMPER	LOWER Heater High Temperature (HOT) Error	
LOWER HEATER LOW TEMPER	LOWER Heater Low Temperature (COLD) Error	
LOWER HEATER OPEN ERROR	LOWER Heater Thermistor Open Error	
LOWER HEATER SHORT ERROR	LOWER Heater Thermistor Short-Circuit Error	
MAGENTA DRUM LIFE OVER	MAGENTA Drum Life	
MAGENTA DBUM NEAB LIEE	MAGENTA Drum Near Life Warning	
	MAGENTA Drum Unit Fuse Cut Error	
	MAGENTA Drum UP/DOWN Error	
	MAGENTA Detection Value Error	
MAGENTA BEGISTRATION EBBOB	MAGENTA Color Drift Error	
	MAGENTA Detected of Irregular Color Drift Correction	
	Value in the Main Scanning Correction	
MAGENTA REGISTRATION OUT LEET	MAGENTA Outside Bange of Correction Error (LEET)	
	MAGENTA Outside Range of Correction Error (PIGHT)	
	MAGENTA Toner Sensor Error	
	MAGENTA Density Correction ID Error 1	
	MAGENTA Density Correction ID Error 2	
	BELI Unit Unmounted	
	BLACK Drum Unmounted	
	MAGENIA Drum Unmounted	
	YELLOW Drum Unmounted	
	Multipurpose Stage Position Error	
	MP-FEEDER Out-of-Paper	
	TRAY1 Out-of-Paper	
PAPER END TRAY2	TRAY2 Out-of-Paper	
PAPER END TRAY3	TRAY3 Out-of-Paper	
	I HAY4 Out-ot-Paper	
	I HAY5 Out-of-Paper	
PAPER NEAR END MULTI PURPOSE FEEDER	MP-FEEDER Out-of-Paper Warning	
PAPER NEAR END TRAY1	TRAY1 Out-of-Paper Warning	
PAPER NEAR END TRAY2	TRAY2 Out-of-Paper Warning	
PAPER NEAR END TRAY3	TRAY3 Out-of-Paper Warning	

Panel Display	Details	
PAPER NEAR END TRAY4	TRAY4 Out-of-Paper Warning	
PAPER NEAR END TRAY5	TRAY5 Out-of-Paper Warning	
PAPER PILE OUT OF TRAY	Paper Conveyance Error	
PAPER SIZE ERROR	Paper Size Error	
POWER SUPLLY FAN MOTOR ERROR	PU Fan Motor Error	
POWER SUPLLY LSI ERROR	Power Supply LSI Error	
PROCESS CONTROL OFF	Process Control OFF	
PROCESS WAIT MODE	Color Drift Density Correction Taking Place (when launched	
	from CU)	
PUNCH BOX NOT EXISTING(PX713)	Punch Dust Box Unmounted	
PUNCH DUST OVERFLOW(PX713)	Punch Dust Overflow	
REGISTRATION SENSOR CALIBRATION ERROR	Color Drift Sensor Calibration Error	
R-SIDE COVER OPEN(PX713)	Right-Side Cover Open	
SHUTTER ERROR1	Density Correction Shutter Error 1	
SHUTTER ERROR2	Density Correction Shutter Error 2	
STACKER FULL BOTTOM BIN(PX713)	Bottom Bin Stacker Full	
STACKER FULL FACE DOWN	Face-Down Stacker Full	
STACKER FULL MAIL BOX1(PX711)	MAIL BOX1 Stacker Full	
STACKER FULL MAIL BOX2(PX711)	MAIL BOX2 Stacker Full	
STACKER FULL TOP BIN(PX713)	Top Bin Stacker Full	
THICKNESS ADJSTING	Detecting Media Thickness	
THICKNESS NON-PAPER AD ERROR	AD Value Outside Standard Error (Media Safe)	
THICKNESS PAPER THICKNESS ERROR	Media Thickness Outside Detection Range Error	
THICKNESS SNS AD ERROR	Sensor Output Difference Outside Standard Range Error	
	(Media Safe)	
THICKNESS THICK_PAPER ERROR	Sensitivity Correction Error	
TOP COVER OPEN	Top Cover Open	
TRAY1 TYPE MISMATCH	TRAY1 Type Error	
TRAY2 COVER OPEN(PX713)	TRAY2 Cover Open	
TRAY2 I/F ERROR	TRAY2 I/F Error	
TRAY2 TYPE MISMATCH	TRAY2 Type Error	
TRAY3 COVER OPEN(PX713)	TRAY3 Cover Open	
TRAY3 I/F ERROR	TRAY3 I/F Error	
TRAY3 TYPE MISMATCH	TRAY3 Type Error	
TRAY4 COVER OPEN(PX713)	TRAY4 Cover Open	
TRAY4 I/F ERROR	TRAY4 I/F Error	
TRAY4 TYPE MISMATCH	TRAY4 Type Error	
TRAY5 COVER OPEN(PX713)	TRAY5 Cover Open	
TRAY5 I/F ERROR	TRAY5 I/F Error	
TRAY5 TYPE MISMATCH	TRAY5 Type Error	
UPPER HEATER HIGH TEMPER	UPPER Heater High Temperature (HOT) Error	
UPPER HEATER LOW TEMPER	UPPER Heater Low Temperature (COLD) Error	
UPPER HEATER OPEN ERROR	UPPER Heater Thermistor Open Error	
UPPER HEATER SHORT ERROR	UPPER Heater Thermistor Short-Circuit Error	
WARMING UP	Warming Up	
YELLOW DRUM LIFE OVER	YELLOW Drum Life	
YELLOW DRUM NEAR LIFE	YELLOW Drum Near Life Warning	
YELLOW DRUM UNIT FUSE CUT ERROR	YELLOW Drum Unit Fuse Cut Error	
YELLOW DRUM UP/DOWN ERROR	YELLOW Drum UP/DOWN Error	
YELLOW IRREGULAR ERROR	YELLOW Detection Value Error	
YELLOW LED HEAD ERROR	YELLOW LED head Error	
YELLOW REGISTRATION ERROR	YELLOW Color Drift Error	
YELLOW REGISTRATION OUT HORIZONTAL	YELLOW Detected of Irregular Color Drift Correction Value	
	in the Main Scanning Correction	
YELLOW REGISTRATION OUT LEFT	YELLOW Outside Range of Correction Error (LEFT)	

Panel Display	Details
YELLOW REGISTRATION OUT RIGHT	YELLOW Outside Range of Correction Error (RIGHT)
YELLOW SENSOR ERROR LEFT	YELLOW LEFT Sensor Error
YELLOW SENSOR ERROR RIGHT	YELLOW RIGHT Sensor Error
YELLOW TONER EMPTY	YELLOW Toner EMPTY
YELLOW TONER LOW	YELLOW Toner LOW
YELLOW TONER SENSOR ERROR	YELLOW Toner Sensor Error
YELLOW ID DENSITY ERROR 1	YELLOW Density Correction ID Error 1
YELLOW ID DENSITY ERROR 2	YELLOW Density Correction ID Error 2

Jam Error Display Details

Panel Display	Details
INFEED:TRAY1	TTRAY1 Hoping Error
INFEED:TRAY2	TRAY2 Hoping Error
INFEED:TRAY3	TRAY3 Hoping Error
INFEED:TRAY4	TRAY4 Hoping Error
INFEED:TRAY5	TRAY5 Hoping Error
INFEED:MP-FEEDER	MP-FEEDER Hoping Error
INFEED:DUPLEX	DUPLEX Hoping Error
INPATH:DUPLEX INPUT	DUPLEX Input Jam
INPATH:DUPLEX ENTRY	DUPLEX Internal Jam
INPATH:REVERSAL	DUPLEX Reversal Jam
INPATH:FEED	Feed Jam
INPATH:TRANSPORT	Conveyance Jam
INPATH:EXIT	Discharge Jam

INFEED .. Information on the paper remaining in the paper feed entry.

INPATH.. Information on the paper remaining in the travel path.

# 5.1.3 Various Printing Methods with a Stand-Alone Printer Coming with a Controller

## Configuration Print

Print the Program Version, control unit composition, other printer compositions and settings.

Operations	: Pane	el Switch press
600 Model	: Ente Ente	r→ $\bigtriangledown$ (Print Information Selection)→Enter→Enter (Configuration Selection)→ r (Execute) →Enter
1200 Model	: Ente	$r \rightarrow \forall$ (Print Page Selection) $\rightarrow$ Enter $\rightarrow \forall$ (Configuration Selection) $\rightarrow$ Enter

#### File List Print

Print list of files stored on the HDD and Flash ROM.

Operations :	Panel Switch press
600 Model :	$\begin{array}{l} Enter \to \bigtriangledown \ (Print Information Selection) \to Enter \to \bigtriangledown \to \bigtriangledown \to \bigtriangledown \ (File List Selection) \to \\ Enter \ (Execute) \to Enter \end{array}$
1200 Model :	No menu.
Font List Print (F	PS)

Print list of PS fonts.

Operations : Panel Switch press

#### Font List Print (PCL)

Print list of PCL fonts.

**Operations** : Panel Switch press

#### Demo Print

Print the demo pattern for each destination on the ROM and HDD.

Operations	:	Panel	Switch	press	
------------	---	-------	--------	-------	--

- 600 Model : Enter→ $\nabla$  (Print Information Selection)→Enter→ $\nabla$ → $\nabla$  (Demo Page Selection)→Enter (DEMO1)→Enter (Execute)→Enter

#### Ethernet Board Self-Diagnosis

- If an Ethernet board is mounted, then print the self-diagnostic results of the Ethernet board.
  - Operations : Press Panel Switch or Ethernet Board Switch (600 Model only)
  - 600 Model : Enter→▽ (Print Information Selection)→Enter→▽→Enter (Network Selection)→Enter (Slot 1: 100/10 Base Selection)→Enter (Print Summary or Print Information Selection)→Enter (Execute)
  - 1200 Model : None (Configuration Print)

Wireless LAN card Self-Diagnosis (600 Model only)

If an Wireless LAN card is mounted, then print the self-diagnostic results of the Wireless LAN card.

- Operations : Press Panel Switch or Wireless LAN card Switch
- 600 Model : Enter→▽ (Print Information Selection)→Enter→▽→Enter (Network Selection)→Enter (Slot 2: Wireless Selection)→Enter (Execute)→Enter

## 5.2 Adjustment After Replacing Parts

The following describes the adjustments necessary when replacing parts.

Color drift adjustment and correction is constantly necessary.

Replacement Parts	Adjustment Details
LED head	Unnecessary
Drum Cartridge (Y, M, C, K)	Unnecessary
Fuser Unit	Unnecessary
Belt Cassette Assy	Unnecessary
PU (S2V PCB)	Assemble EEPROM used with the PCB before it was replaced. *Note 1
CU (600dpi: HMO PCB)	Assemble EEPROM used with the PCB before it was replaced. *Note 2
CU (1200dpi: ASP PCB)	Assemble EEPROM, HDD Keychip and LAN Card used with the PCB before it was replaced. *Note 3
MLETB13 (HMK PCB)	Initialize the network information according to details described in Section 5.2.6.
Paper Thickness Sensor Assy	Paper Thickness Detection Sensitivity Correction and Media Thickness Detection Value Test

\*Note 1: When using a new EEPROM for the PU (S2V PCB), the paper thickness detection sensitivity shall be corrected. \*Note 2: When a new EEPROM is used for the CU board of the 600-dpi system, adjust it to the customer s settings.

If the customer has registered files in the Flash, restore them. (Forms overlay and the like.)

\*Note 3: When replacing the CU board, HDD, or EEPROM of the 1200-dpi system, follow the instructions given in the annexed table.

## 5.2.1 Precautions when Replacing the Engine Control PCB

When replacing the Engine Control PCB (SV2 PWB) remove the EEPROM from the old PCB. Then mount it on the new PCB. (For Error other than Engine EEPROM Error)

If on the Operation Panel, a "SERVICE CALL XXX (Engine EEPROM Error)" is displayed, replace with new EEPROM. In this case execute the procedures described in Section 5.2.2.

#### For ODA version

Be careful to change the engine-control substrate (S2V PWB) of 600 dpi device due to different substrate to change based on a destination (due to different version of PU-FW).

Standard devide: S2V-11 Specified destination (for AB): S2V 18

#### 5.2.2 Precautions Upon EEPROM Replacement

When replacing the Engine Control PCB (SV2 PWB), if the EEPROM was removed but not mounted on the new PCB, or if the EEPROM is replaced with a new EEPROM, then the Version Read Function (Fuse Cut) has become invalid. For this reason, there is a need to use the PJL command to switch the Factory Mode to the Shipping Mode to activate the new EEPROM.

[Details]

- 1. To set the Shipping Mode, send the applicable PJL File to the printer.
- 2. To apply the setting, restart the printer or send a reboot command (PJL File) to the printer.

[Procedure]

Execute the following procedures from the MS-DOS prompt.

- 1. Copy/b Pjl\_ship.bin prn
- 2. Copy/b Pjl\_reboot.bin prn
  - or Turn OFF/ON power source.

[Necessary PjlFile]

- 1. Pjl\_ship.bin
- 2. Pjl\_reboot.bin
- Note When replacing the EEPROM, the belt, toner, ID and other life information will be cleared. This will result in an error in life management until the next unit replacement time. Be careful of this difference. The count that is cleared with EEPROM replacement is as follows. Since everything other than "Total Sheets Feed" will be cleared when each unit is replaced with a new one, the error is resolved at this point.

Item	Details	Count Details
Fuser	Fuser Life Count	The number of printouts are converted into number of Letter Sheets, from when the new fuser unit is assembled.
Transfer Belt	Transfer Belt Life Count	The number of printouts are converted into number of Letter Sheets, from when the new belt unit is assembled.
Black Imaging Drum Cyan Imaging Drum Magenta Imaging Drum Yellow Imaging Drum	Imaging Drum Life Count of Each Color	The number of turn around is converted into number of Letter Sheets, from when the new ID unit is assembled.
Total Sheets Feed	Unit Life Count	Total number of printouts
Black Impressions Cyan Impressions Magenta Impressions Yellow Impressions	Total Number of Printout Sheets	The number of printouts from when the new ID unit is assembled.

5.2.3 Replace EEPROM After Replacing CU PCB (600dpi Model)

When replacing the CU PCB, remove the PCB EEPROM that the user was using, then mount it back on the PCB after replacing the CU PCB. (This is necessary to handover the user set details and font installation information to the new PCB.)

If the user's EEPROM malfunctions and cannot be used, then use a new PCB EEPROM. In this case, use a new PCB and EEPROM set with a destination.

## 5.2.4 Set Destination (Check Procedure: Print Demo Page) (600dpi Model)

Set this setting as the final setting after mounting the parts on the unit.

The default is set to ODA. When shipping the unit, always set it with each destination.

Note Note 
This setting is stored on the EEPROM on the CU PCB.

1. Do not set this setting and ship the unit with the default setting for maintenance PCB for domestic sales, ODA, OEL and AOS.



- 2. Setting from the Operation Panel: Setting the destination setting after launching from the Maintenance Mode.
  - ① Press the [MENU+] + [MENU-] + [HELP] key, then turn ON the power source.
  - ② Continue to press until [OKIUSER] is displayed.
  - ③ Press the [ENTER] key. [\*ODA] will be displayed at the bottom row of the LCD.
  - ④ Press the [MENU+] or [MENU-] key to select the destination of the unit.
  - $\bigcirc$  Press the [ENTER] key. The [\*] will light up.
  - 6 Press the [BACK] key, to finalize (apply) the destination setting.
  - Press the [ON LINE] key. The destination will be modified, the engine menu will be reset and the printer will be launched.

5.2.5 Restoring Flash ROM Details of the CU PCB (600dpi Model)

The CU PCB is mounted with 4MB of Flash ROM. This allows the user to register voluntary files.

Note When replacing the CU PCB, print the file list of the information menu before replacement. Then check the files that are already registered. What's more, after replacement, always re-register the files necessary.

5.2.6 Precautions When Replacing OkiLAN 8200e or OkiLAN 8200e Mounted CU PCB (600dpi Model)

When Replacing OkiLAN 8200e (Soft NIC HMK PCB) or OkiLAN 8200e Mounted CU PCB (HMO PCB), or when replacing CU (HMO PCB) and OkiLAN 8200e at the same time, there is a need to initialize the network information stored on the Flash ROM.

• When it is necessary to initialize the network information (600dpi Model)



When Replacing HMO PCB or When Replacing OkiLAN 8200e (HMK PCB)

[How to Initialize the Network Information] (600dpi Model only)

- (1) Turn OFF the printer.
- (2) If the network cable is connected to the printer, disconnect the cable from the printer-side.
- (3) Press the black push switch ([Test] Button) on the OkiLAN 8200e, and turn on the print. Continue to press the black push SW until the following message appears on the top row of the operation panel "One Moment" or the following message appears on the bottom row "Initializing network".

There is no longer any need to press the black push SW once the above is displayed.

(4) Initialization is completed if "Ready to Print" appears on the operation panel.

Note / For 1200dpi, OkiLAN 6500e

[Procedure to Check that Network Information Has been Initialized]

- (1) Printer the "Printer Information" and "Setting Details".
- (2) Check the following 2 points in the "Network" area of the first sheet of the results printed for the setting details.

Slot: 100/10 Base

MAC Address

Short Printer Nam

IF the  $\bigcirc$  number value is the same (3 bytes), the network information has been successfully initialized.

#### 5.2.7 CU PCB of 1200 dpi Printer and Replacement of Mounted Components

Component	Adjustment	Recovery	Unrecoverable item
ASP PCB	Mount the EEPROM, Key Chip, HMK PCB, HDD used for the old ASP PCB (EEPROM and Key Chip are not mounted on a maintenance ASP PCB).	None	None
НМК РСВ	After a new HMK PCB is mounted on the ASP PCB, perform the Factory Default (the MAC address stored in the EEPROM of the HMK PCB is copied to the HDD).	As the MAC address is changed, the password to log in the web page has to be changed.	None
HDD	After a new HDD is mounted on the ASP PCB, perform the Factory Default (the EEOROM setting data are copied to the HDD).	<ul> <li>The user settings stored in the HDD will be lost. Set necessary parameters again.</li> <li>If fixed IP is selected for the network setting, it shall be set again.</li> <li>The clock shall be set again.</li> <li>User-installed fonts will be lost. These can be restored using the backup utility.</li> </ul>	If the fonts are not backed up, they cannot be restored.
CF	After a new CF is mounted on the ASP PCB, perform the Factory Default (the EEPROM setting data are copied to the CF).	The similar recovery to that for HDD is needed.	
EEPROM	<ul> <li>Choose a maintenance EEPROM for the model.</li> <li>After a maintenance EEPROM is mounted on the ASP PCB, perform the Factory Default (the EEPROM data are copied to the HDD).</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>The user settings stored in the HDD will be lost. Set necessary parameters again.</li> <li>If fixed IP is selected for the network setting, it shall be set again.</li> <li>The clock shall be set again.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>The page count in the EEPROM of the CU will be lost and Color/Monochrome Page will be returned to zero. When the number of printed sheets and other information are necessary, print out the engine maintenance menu.</li> <li>The user-installed fonts will be lost.</li> </ul>
KeyChip	After a new Key Chip is mounted on the ASP PCB, perform the Factory Default.	The user settings stored in the HDD will be lost. Set necessary parameters again.	

#### Nonvolatile memory and a combination (at field)

\* Factory Default Procedure

Operator panel operation: Hold down [MENU +] or [MENU -] key and choose "Administrator menu."  $\rightarrow$  "Do you want to continue setting?" appears. Choose "Yes."  $\rightarrow$  "Offline ... Starting setting ... Please wait" appears.  $\rightarrow$  Press [MENU -] key and choose "Factory default."  $\rightarrow$  Choose "Yes."  $\rightarrow$  Reboot.

5.2.8 Precautions in Key Chip Replacement (1200 dpi printer)

EFI's controller PCB for a 1200 dpi printer has an EEPROM called Key Chip. The Key Chip contains EFI's management information. If the Key Chip is not mounted, the ASP PCB won't work.

If the error message "This is not an authorized program 001" as shown in "7.5.1 LCD Message List" appears, replace the Key Chip with a new Key Chip. The removed Key Chip shall be returned to the ODC. The Key Chip is very expensive, as the royalty fee is included. Take great care in handling it.

#### 5.2.9 Precautions in EEPROM Replacement (1200 dpi printer)

The maintenance EEPROM for a 1200 dpi printer is prepared separately for each model with the model No. and other data written in advance at Fukushima factory. This is to eliminate the necessity to download the file from a PC during replacement on site.

#### 5.2.10 Precautions in HDD Replacement (1200 dpi printer)

HDD storage values are used for various set ups, such as network and model serial No. etc. in 1200dpi printer (EFI model.) If HDD is changed due to a trouble shooting or error message, it is necessary to re-setup the user set information, which has not saved in the EEPROM after coping the information stored in the EEPROM PCB into HDD.

See below for the procedure.

- ① Configuration print should take place before a change or addition of HDD. (It is used for reference for later resetting.)
- ② Change HDD (keep the power off to execute.)
- ③ Execute the factory default (see 5.2.7 for details) (Information stored in the EEPROM PCB such as the model name and P&P will be copied into HDD.)
- ④ Execute configuration print. Re-setup if not corresponded to the result of ①.

The removed HDD shall be returned to the ODC (JPN/AOS), ODA (North America), OEL (EMEA). The HDD label is very expensive, as the royalty fee is included. Take great care in handling it. The royalty fee varies from program to program (GA is more expensive than Std). Make sure the program is correct.

## 5.2.11 Product Code of Maintenance HDD (1200 dpi printer)

The maintenance HDD's have different product codes according to program type and version. When ordering a maintenance HDD, be sure to choose the HDD with the same program type and version as those for the currently used HDD. If the user requires, however, you may choose the latest version of the program.

Design of HDD management labels has changed in Aug of 2005.

(Patch column is added so that the released Patch file for firmware modification can be recorded.)

It should mark up the Patch column if it takes place.

A new label should be attached on an old one to mark up HDD Rev. and Patch when it takes place for an old label HDD.

Note 
Release and application of Patch file is specified in FCO.

See below for part numbers of new label.

-		

For Example (Roman Pro GA)

Old type	New type		
For         Note           1 2 0 0 dpi         -bo NOT REMOVE THIS HOD FROM EQUIPMENT,           Roman GA 42925701         -bo NOT DISASSEMELE OR MODIFY,           1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8         -bo NOT REMOVE THIS HOD FROM EQUIPMENT,           1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8         -wold GWING SHOCK,           Promise         -wold GWING SHOCK,           1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8         -bo NOT DUSH ON THE TOP COVER,           - WOLD GWING SHOCK,         -wold GWING SHOCK,           - Do NOT TOUCH THE BOARD AND TERMINALS.         -bo NOT DUSH ON THE OP COVER,	For 1 2 0 0 dpi R O M A N GA Roman GA 42925701 - 00N07168MOVET Natisco FROM COMPARENT. - 00N07168MOVET Natisco FROM - 0		

5.2.12 Product Code of Maintenance CU Program (600 dpi printer)

The maintenance CU program ROM DIMM is available in two types: Flash ROM and P2 ROM. The following ROM DIMM types have been released.

The F/W version is indicated on the label on the Flash ROM DIMM or printed on the P2 ROM DIMM Chip.

The F/W version of the Flash ROM DIMM is the latest version at the time of shipment.

## 5.3 Density Correction

When the printer is shipped, the Automatic Density Correction Mode is set to "Automatic". If it is set to "Manual" there may be drifting during use. Set this if there is any problem with the density.

- Note Set this when the printer is not running (Stop State). Do not set this while the printer is warming up.
  - (1) Press the [ENTER] key several times. The [Color menu] will appear.
  - (2) Press the [MENU+] or [MENU-] key to display the [Density Correction/Execute].
  - (3) Press the [ENTER] key.

Automatic Density Correction starts.

## 5.4 Paper Thickness Detection/Sensitivity Correction

Please refer to okiDoc #3546 on the BPX for instructions on how to calibrate this sensor. Note: A valid BP

## NOTE: A valid BPX username and password may be required to view the okiDoc via the link above.

#### Overview

The sensitivity of the micro-displacement sensor used as the media thickness detector are not uniform in detection sensitivity. To learn the sensitivity of that unit's sensor beforehand, there is a need to pass a media source with a priorly known thickness through the detector. The sensitivity shall then be detected based on the output value of the sensor.

Adjustments are necessary when replacing the Paper Thickness Sensor, Resist Roller and PU PCB.

Prepare four media sources with a thickness already measured with a micrometer (MDQ-30M, MDQ-30). Then pass those sheets through the MP Tray. The media thickness sensitivity correction value is automatically set with the 3 sheets. Then the media thickness detection value is tested with the 4th sheet.

Media Used : Transparency Sheet (42527801)

Paper Thickness Detection Error:  $\pm 10\mu m$  or less

# 6. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE

## 6.1 Routine Replacement of Consumable Parts

We recommend that the user periodically replaces the following parts according to the guideline indicated. (Note that failure to replace these parts may result in malfunction and will not guaranty quality printout.)

Part	Replacement Period	Replacement Condition	Post-Replacement Adjustment
Heavy Duty Toner Cartridge	When the following display appears. "Insert toner."	When printing 15,000 sheets.	
Toner Cartridge		When printing 5,000 sheets.	
Image Drum Cartridge	When the following display appears. "Replace drum."	When printing 30,000 sheets. (3P/J)	
Fuser Unit	When the following display appears. "Replace fuser."	When printing 100,000 sheets.	
Belt Unit	When the following display appears. "Replace belt."	When printing 100,000 sheets. (3P/J)	
Paper Supply Roller	When mis-feed frequently occurs. (The number of sheets in the cassette must be appropriate)	When printing 120,000 sheets. (Guideline)	
Waste Toner Box	Replace when "Replace the waste toner box" appears.		

- Note! 1. Supplies (image drum, toner cartridge, fuser and belt unit) are not included.
  - 2. The circuit boards, such as Power Supply PCB, PU PCB and CU PCB, are not included.

The user shall be held responsible in periodically replacing these consumable parts.

## 6.2 Cleaning

Accordingly clean the inside and outside of the C9800/C9600 using a cloth and compact vacuum cleaner (hand-cleaner).

Note NEVER touch the imaging drum terminal, LED lens array or LED head connector.

## 6.3 LED Lens Array Cleaning

Clean the LED lens array if a white band, white stripe (white-out, light printing) occurs in the vertical direction of the printout.

Note ALWAYS use a LED head cleaner or soft tissue paper to clean the LED lens array. NEVER use methyl alcohol (isopropyl alcohol; rubbing alcohol), thinner or other solvents to clean the lens since this may damage the surface of the lens. (A LED head cleaner comes with the toner cartridge package)

White Band, White Stripe (White-out, Light Printout)

## **Cleaning LED Head**

Do the cleaning in case of light print, white line, or blurred print.

(1) Grasp the Top Cover Handle and open the Top Cover.





Do not touch it. The Fuser Unit is very hot. Do not touch it.



- (2) Gently wipe the lens surface of the LED Head (4 places) using the LED lens cleaner or soft tissue.
- Note! Do not use solvents such as methyl alcohol or thinner as they will damage the lens surface.
- *Memo* An LED lens cleaner is enclosed in an optional replacement toner cartridge.



(3) Close the Top Cover.



#### 6.4 Pickup Roller Cleaning

Clean the pickup roller if there is any problem with paper feeding.

Use a soft cloth, etc. with alcohol to clean the roller surface, with care not to scratch or Note . damage the surface during the process.

## 6.5 Cleaning Feed Roller

Clean the Feed Rollers when paper jams occur frequently. Three Feed Rollers are provided for each tray. Cleaning method for the Trays 1 to 5 (Trays 2 to 5 are optional) is different from that for the Multipurpose Tray.

Tool: Soft wet cloth

Trays 1 to 5

The cleaning procedure below takes the Tray 1 as an example. The Trays 2 to 5 (optional) are cleaned in the same procedure.

- (1) Take off your wristwatch, bracelets and any other similar accessories.
- (2) Turn off power of the printer.

See page 19 for how to turn off power.



(3) Open the Tray 1 Side Cover.



Tray 1 Side Cover

(4) Draw out the Tray 1 fully.

Draw the Tray until it stops. While lifting it, draw out the Tray fully.



(5) Put your hand into the opening where the Tray has been placed. Clean the three Feed Rollers using a soft wet cloth.

If it is hard to wipe the roller, put your hand from the Tray 1 Side Cover.



Feed Roller (3 rollers)

(6) Insert the Tray 1 back into place.



(7) Close the Tray 1 Side Cover.



Cleaning of the Feed Rollers is completed.

## Multipurpose Tray

(1) Press the button on the right of the printer to open the Multipurpose Tray.



(2) Open the Paper Support and move the Paper Guide slightly to the center.



(3) Move the lever on the right of the Multipurpose Tray at the joint of the tray and the printer into the position as shown below.



(4) While lifting the Multipurpose Tray slightly with your right hand, push the lever inward with your left hand and loosen it.



(5) Just as in (3) above, move the lever on the left of the Multipurpose Tray at the joint of the tray and the printer into the position as shown below.



(6) While lifting the Multipurpose Tray slightly with your left hand, push the lever inward with your right hand and loosen it.



(7) Move the loosened portions towards the printer. The cover will rise and the Feed Rollers will be revealed.



(8) Put your finger into the hole under the rollers and open the cover in the arrow direction.



(9) Clean the three Feed Rollers using a soft wet cloth.



(10) Close the cover.



(11) Hold the joints of the printer and the Multipurpose Tray with both hands and lower the cover.



(12) While lifting the right edge of the Multipurpose Tray slightly, insert the protrusion of the lever as shown below.



(13) Move the lever into the position below.



(14) While lifting the left edge of the Multipurpose Tray slightly, insert the protrusion of the lever as shown below.



(15) Move the lever into the position below.



(16) Widen the Paper Guide and fold the Paper Support.



(17) Close the Multipurpose Tray.



Cleaning of the Feed Rollers is completed.

# 7. TROUBLESHOOTING PROCEDURES

## 7.1 Precautions Before Repairs

- (1) Check the basic inspection items indicated in the User's Manual.
- (2) Learn from the customer the details on when malfunction occurs.
- (3) Inspect the state that closely resembles the state of a malfunction.

## 7.2 Items to Check Before Remedying Abnormal Image

- (1) Is the environmental conditions of this equipment appropriate?
- (2) Have the consumable parts (toner, drum cartridge) been properly replaced?
- (3) Is there anything wrong with the paper? Refer to the paper specification for more details on this.
- (4) Is the drum cartridge properly set?

## 7.3 Precautions Before Remedying Abnormal Image

- (1) Do not touch OPC drum surface with hand or foreign substance.
- (2) Do not expose the OPC drum to direct sunlight.
- (3) The fuser unit is hot. Therefore, do not touch with hands.
- (4) Do not expose the image drum to more than 5 minutes of light. This includes room lighting, as well.

## 7.4 Troubleshooting Preparations

(1) Operation Panel Display

The troubleshooting state of this machine will be displayed on the LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) of the operator panel.

Take appropriate repair/maintenance measures according to the message displayed on the LCD.

## 7.5 Troubleshooting

When this printer troubleshoots, find the cause of trouble using the following procedure.



#### 7.5.1 LCD Message List

When the printer detects errors that can be restored, it displays a service call error on the LCD, as shown below.

Service Call nnn: Error

Note / nnn is an Error code.

When a service call is displayed, the error code and accompanying error information is displayed on the bottom row of the LCD. The meaning of the error code and the overview of the remedies are indicated in Table 7-1-1.

_ · · ·	-					
Display	Cause	Error Description and Analysis	judgment	Remedy	600	1200
Service Call	A heavy trouble of	Is the error display	Yes	Power OFF/ON	1	-
001: Error	the CU substrate	reproducible?				
	(defective substrate	Is the error display	Yes	Replace CU PCB.		
	or power supply	reproducible?		(Must replace EEPROM)		
	capacity shortage)					
	was detected.					
Service Call	This stems from a	Record three digital numbers			1	-
Power off/on	variety of causes.	below LCD column.				
nnn: Fatal Error	For analyzing causes,	Restart with OFF/ON?	Yes	Notify three digital numbers below		
PC: nnnnnnnn	record three numbers			LCD column and F/W version.		
LR: nnnnnnn	(called program		No	Check if it occurs depending on		
FR: nnnnnnn	counting value)			a print data.		
002: Error	indicated below LCD	Does an error occur in a	Yes	Request for print data investiga-		
to	column and a printer	particular print data?		tion.		
007: Error	firmware version.	F F	No	Change BAM DIMM or BOM		
	[Cause]					
	① Unmatched print	Is the error display reproducible?	Yes	Beplace CU PCB		
	data and printer			(Must replace FEPBOM)		
	FW	Is the error display reproducible?	Yes			
	Damaged	Is the error display reproducible?	No	Re-execute Network setup such		
	EFPBOM data			as user setup etc. for use		
	3 Defect BOM		Vas	Change the printer		
	DIMM or BAM		163	Change the printer.		
	Delect compo-					
	6 Others					
	Reep on analyzing					
	still remains.					
O and a store of all	of causes.		NL			
Service Call	CU ROM Hash	Is the Slot A ROM DIMM	INO	Remount Slot A ROM DIMM	-	-
020: Error	Check Error 1	mounted properly?				
or		Is operations restored by	Yes	Replace Slot A ROM DIMM.		
024: Error		replacing the Slot A ROM	NO			
	011 5 1 5 0 1	DIMM?		(Must replace EEPROM)		
Service Call	CU Font ROM	Detected a Font ROM_DIMM		Is the Slot B ROM DIMM1	-	-
025: Error	Hash Error	hash check error.		mounted normally?		
		(Japan Model only)		Is the problem corrected by		
				replacing the Slot B ROM		
				DIMM1?		
Service Call	CU Resident	Is the error display reproducible?	Yes	Replace CU PCB.	1	-
030: Error	RAM Check Error			(Must replace EEPROM)		
Service Call	CU Slot1 DIMM	Is the applicable RAM DIMM	No	Re-mount applicable RAM DIMM.	1	-
031: Error	RAM Check Error	mounted properly?		Replace RAM DIMM.		
		Is operation restored by replacing	Yes	Replace CU PCB.		
		the applicable RAM DIMM?	No	(Must replace EEPROM)		

Table 7-1-1 Operator Alarm (1/10)

Display	Cause	Error Description and Analysis	judgment	Remedy	600	1200
Service Call	CU Slot2 DIMM	Is the applicable RAM DIMM	No	Re-mount applicable RAM DIMM.	1	-
032: Error	RAM Check Error	mounted properly?		Replace RAM DIMM.		
		Is operation restored by replacing	Yes	Replace CU PCB.		
		the applicable RAM DIMM?	No	(Must replace EEPROM)		
Service Call	Slot1 RAM	Is this a standard RAM DIMM?	No	Use a standard RAM DIMM.	1	-
036: Error	Spec error	Is the applicable RAM DIMM	No	Re-mount applicable RAM DIMM.		
	Specification of	difference mounted normal?		Replace RAM DIMM		
	DIMM in CU RAM	Is operation restored by replacing	Yes	Replace CU PCB.		
	slot is unsup-	the applicable RAM DIMM?	No	(Must replace EEPROM)		
	ported.					
Service Call	Slot2 RAM Spec	Is this a standard RAM DIMM?	NO	Use a standard RAM DIMM.	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>	-
037: Error	error	Is the applicable RAM DIMM	NO	Re-mount applicable RAM DIMM.		
	Specification of	difference mounted normal?	Vee	Replace RAM DIMM.		
	DIMINI IN CU RAM	the applicable RAM DIMM2	Yes	Must replace EERPOM		
	siol2 is unsup-		INO			
Service Call		Is the problem corrected by	Voc			
040. Error	FBBOB	replacing the CLI PCB	103	(User must correct environmental	ř	_
		FEPBOM?		conditions)		
			No	Beplace CIL PCB		
			110	(Must replace EEPBOM)		
Service Call	CU FLASH	Is the error display	Yes	Replace CU PCB.		-
041: Error	ERROR	reproducible?		(Must replace EEPROM)		
	CU PCB flash					
	ROM error					
Service Call	CU PCB flash	Failed to access flash memory		Replace CU PCB	1	-
042: Error	ROM error	that is surface-mounted on CU		(Must replace EEPROM)		
to	Flash File System	PCB.		*1		
045: Error	Error					
Service Call	PS+PCL Model CU	Is a standard model program	Yes	Replace Program ROM DIMM.	1	-
048: Error	ROM is mounted on	ROM mounted?	No	Replace with standard program		
	a PCL model unit.			ROM DIMM officially for the model.		
Service Call	CU Type Mis-	Is a standard model program	Yes	Replace Program ROM DIMM.		-
049: Error	match	ROM mounted?	No	Replace with standard program		
	CU ROM model			ROM DIMM officially for the		
	mismatches unit.			model.		
Service Call	Operator Panel	Is the error display reproducible?	Yes	Refer to the flowchart on "Failure	1	-
050: Error	Error			to appear on LCD".		
Service Call	CU FAN ERROR	Is the connection of the CU PCB	No	Normally connect.	1	-
051: Error	CPU cooling fan	normal?	Yes	Replace fan.		
	of CU PCB is		No	Replace CU PCB.		
	abnormal.	Replace and restore fan?		(Must replace EEPROM)		
Power Off/on	Image	Is the error display		Power OFF/ON	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>	-
052: Error	Processor Driver	reproducible?		Replace CU PCB. (Replace		
Dower Offen	Error Devallet Interface	le the error display				
Power Off/on		is the error display		Power OFF/ON	<b>`</b>	-
USU: EITOR	Driver Error					
Power Off/on	USB Drive Error	Is the error display reproducible?				
062: Error		is the Network PCB properly		Benlace CLL PCB (Benlace	v	_
002. Enoi		mounted?		FEPBOM)		
Power Off/on	Network comm	Does replacement of the network	No	Properly mount		-
063: Error	Frror	PCB correct the problem?	Yes	Beplace Network	•	
	H/W I/F abnormal-		No	Beplace CLL PCB		
	ity between CU-			(Must replace EEPBOM)		
	NIC.					
Power Off/on	CANT HAPPEN	Check if problem is corrected by	No	Replace CU PCB.		
070: Error	PS Firmware	turning OFF/ON Power/		(Must replace EEPROM)		
	Abnormality					
	Detection					
Power Off/on	Engine communi-	Is the CU Assy properly	No	Properly mount	1	
072: Error	cation error	mounted?	Yes	Replace CU PCB.		
-	I/F Error between	Does replacement of the CU		(Must replace EEPROM)		
	PU-CU.	PCB correct the problem?	No	Replace PU PCB		

				5,,		
Display	Cause	Error Description and Analysis	judgment	Remedy	600	1200
Power Off/on	Video overrun	Is the CU Assy properly	No	Properly mount	1	-
073: Error	detect	mounted?		Replace CU PCB.		
to		Does replacement of the CU	Yes	(Must replace EEPROM)		
075: Error		PCB correct the problem?				
Service Call	Parameter Match	Normal Read/Write not possible		If the condition does not change	1	-
081: Error	Check Error	with EEPROM or Flash.		replace CU PCB.		
Service Call		is the error display		If turning OFF and ON the power	-	1
096. Enor				again does not correct the		
				servicing personnel is necessary		
Service Call	Inverter power	Is the error display		If turning OFF and ON the power	1	1
097 Error	supply Error	reproducible?		again does not correct the		·
				problem, maintenance by a		
				servicing personnel is necessary.		
Service Call	When turning ON	Does the Error take place again?	Yes	Replace engine control PCB	1	1
104: Error	the power,			(S2V).		
	detected error in					
	engine EEPROM					
	test total.					
Service Call	When turning	Is there an EEPROM?	Yes	Check to see if there is an	1	1
105: Error	ON the power,			EEPROM. If not, mount an		
	failed to detect			EEPROM.		
	the EEPROM	Dana tha Error taka alaas assia0	NO	Mount the EEPROM.		
	(presence).	Does the Error take place again?	res	Replace engine control PCB		
Sonvice Call	Error dotoctod in	Doos the Error take place again?	Vac	(S2V). Replace ongine control PCR		
106: Error		Does the Life take place again?	165			, v
100. Enoi				(02 ).		
Service Call	An optional unit	Is the proper optional unit for	No	Mount the proper optional unit.	1	1
111: Error	for another model	that model mounted?		Check the connection. Then turn	-	
to	was detected.		No	ON the power again. Replace		
117: Error	111: Duplex unit			the unit if operations is not		
	112: 2nd Tray			restored.		
	113: 3rd Tray					
	114: 4th Tray					
	115: 5th Tray					
	116: Finisher					
	117: Inverter					
Service Call	Low Voltage	1) Is the PU PCB high voltage	NO	Connect properly	<b>_</b>	
121: Error	Power FAN Error	power cable properly con-	res	Check to see if there is any		
		Nected?		contact-defects in the high		
		again?	Vas	Replace High Voltage Power Unit		
Service Call	Sensor detects an	1) Is an Error message dis-	Yes	Turn ON power again		
123: Error	inappropriate	played?	Yes	Replace the environmental	•	•
	relative humidity	2) Does the Error take place		sensor.		
	for the operating	again?				
	environment.					
Service Call	Sensor detects an	1) Is an Error message dis-	Yes	Turn ON power again.	1	1
124: Error	inappropriate	played?				
	room temperature	2) Does the Error take place	Yes	Replace the environmental		
	for the operating	again?		sensor.		
	environment.					
Service Call	Error detected in	1) Is an Error message dis-	Yes	Turn ON power again.	1	1
125: Error	MPT home	played?				
	position.	2) Does the Error take place	Yes	Replace MPT		
		again?			-	
Turn OFF the	Sensor Dew Error	Sensor Dew Error Detected		Wait a while then turn ON power	1	
power and wait				again.		
126: Dew Error	1		1			

	<u> </u>		1	<u> </u>	6.5	
Display	Cause	Error Description and Analysis	judgment	Remedy	600	1200
Service Call	Engine FAN	Error was detected in each fan.		Is the applicable location of the	1	<ul> <li>I</li> </ul>
128: Error	Motor Error	01: Fuser FAN Error		fan connection normal?		
		02: Power FAN Error		If the condition does not change		
		03: PU Motor FAN Error		Replace fan.		
		04: Belt FAN Error				
		05: IDFAN Error				
		06: Top Cover FAN Error				
Service Call	After turning ON	1) Is an Error message dis-	Yes	ICheck the OED head unit.	1	1
131 <sup>.</sup> Y Head	the power or	played?	No	Turn ON power again		-
132: M Head	when cover is	2) Is the LED head properly				
133: C Head	closed the sensor	mounted?	Voc	Replace the LED head Assy		
100. O Head	detects that the	2) Deep the Error take place	103			
134: K Head		3) Does the Error take place				
	unit is missing.	again?		T ON		
Service Call	Color ID up/down	1) Is an Error message dis-	Yes	Turn ON power again.	-	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
140: Y	error is detected.	played?				
141: M		2) Does the Error take place	Yes	Confirm that the Y, M, and C ID		
142: Error		again?		units are in position, and reboot.		
Service Call	This is indicated	1) Is the toner lock-lever-open	Yes	Confirm that the lever is in	1	1
144: Y ID	when the toner	error indicated?		position.		
145: M ID	feed switch error	2) Does the problem persist	Yes	Replace the toner feed unit.		
146: C ID	or the toner lock-	even if the ID units are	No	Replace the ID units.		
147: K ID	lever-open error	replaced?				
	occurs repeatedly					
	when new toner is					
	used					
Service Call	When ID unit fuse	Check if the ID Unit is normally	Yes	Check cable connection then	1	
	cannot be cut	mounted	103	replace engine PCB	ľ	ľ
150. T		mounted.		Teplace engine PCD.		
151. W						
152: 0						
153: K						
Service Call	When belt unit	Is the belt unit mounted nor-	Yes	Check cable connection, then	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
154: Error	fuse cannot be	mally?		replace engine PCB.		
	cut.					
Service Call	When fuser unit	Is the fuser unit mounted	Yes	Check cable connection, then	1	1
155: Error	fuse cannot be	normally?		replace engine PCB.		
	cut.					
Service Call	Toner sensor	1) Is an Error message dis-	Yes	Replace toner sensor or Assy	1	1
160: Y Toner	detected error.	played?		(SGG-PWB).		
161: M Toner		2) Does the Error take place	Yes	Replace toner sensor or Assy		
162: C Toner		again?		(SGG-PWB).		
163: K Toner						
Service Call	Thermistor Slope	1) Is an Error message dis-	Yes	Turn ON power again.	1	1
167: Error	Frror	played?				-
		2) Does the Error take place	Yes	Leave in that state for 30		
		again?	100	minutes then turn ON nower		
		againt		again		
Sonico Call	Componentian	1) lo on Error monago dia	Vaa			
		1) IS an Error message dis-	res	Turn ON power again.	-	· ·
168: Error	Thermistor Error	played?		Leave in the test state for 00		
		2) Does the Error take place	Yes	Leave in that state for 30		
		again?		minutes then turn ON power		
				again.		
Service Call	Upper Side	1) Is an Error message dis-	Yes	Turn ON power again.	1	1
169: Error	Thermistor Error	played?				
		2) Does the Error take place	Yes	Leave in that state for 30		
		again?		minutes then turn ON power		
		_		again.		
Service Call	Fuser Thermistor	1) Is an Error message dis-	Yes	Turn ON power again.	1	
170: Frror	short-circuit or Open	played?				
171: Error	is detected (High	2) Does the Error take place	Vec	Leave in that state for 30		
174: Error		again?	185	minutes then turn ON newer		
174. EIIUI		ayanı		again		
				ayam.		
					1	

Tahlo	7-1-1	Operator	Δlarm	(4/10)
rable	/	Operator	Alaini	(4/10)

			, ( <b>(</b>			
Display	Cause	Error Description and Analysis	judgment	Remedy	600	1200
Service Call	Thermistor	1) Is an Error message dis-	Yes	Turn ON power again.	1	1
172: Error	indicates High	played?				
176: Error	Temperature	2) Does the Error take place	Yes	Leave in that state for 30		
	(HOT) Error.	again?		minutes then turn ON power		
				again.		
Service Call	Thermistor	1) Is an Error message dis-	Yes	Turn ON power again.		<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
173: Error	Indicates Low	played?	Vaa	Leave in that state for 00		
177: Error		2) Does the Error take place	Yes	Leave in that state for 30		
	(COLD) Enor.	again?		again		
Service Call	Wrong Euser	1) is the model and power	No	Assemble the proper fuser	1	
179: Error	Standard	voltage of the fuser mounted	Yes	Check to see that the fuser is	ľ	ľ
170. Enor	Clandard	proper?	100	properly assemble.		
		2) Fuser is properly mounted,	Yes	Replace fuser.		
		but Error results again.				
Service Call	The engine detects	1) Is an Error message dis-	Yes	Turn ON power again.	1	1
180: Error	communication is	played?				
to	not possible with	2) Does the Error take place	Yes	Replace optional unit.		
186: Error	the optional unit.	again?				
	180: Envelope					
	Feeder					
	(Unused)					
	181: Duplex unit					
	182: Tray2 unit					
	183: Tray3 unit					
	184: Tray4 unit					
	186: Finisher unit					
Service Call	Communication	Is the control panel and cable	No	Connect properly	1	1
187: Error	with control panel	connected properly?	Yes	Replace the control panel and		·
	failed.			cable.		
Service Call	Sub-CPU I/F Error	Sub-CPU Communication Error		Check the connection of the	1	1
188: Error				S2M board.		
				Replace the S2M board.		
Service Call	Inverter Unit I/F	1) Inverter communications	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F	1	1
Service Call 189: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error	1) Inverter communications error	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable.	1	1
Service Call 189: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place</li> </ol>	Yes Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board.	1	1
Service Call 189: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> </ol>	Yes Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board.		<i>√</i>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> </ol>	Yes Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CLI PCB (Replace	<i>J</i> <i>J</i>	<ul> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> </ul>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> </ol>	Yes Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace	<i>✓</i> <i>✓</i>	<ul> <li></li> <li></li> </ul>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM)		
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again. try downloading again.	\ \ \ \	<ul> <li></li> <li></li> <li></li> <li></li> </ul>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for	J J J	<ul> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> </ul>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will	<i>J</i> <i>J</i>	<ul> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> </ul>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur)	<i>J</i> <i>J</i>	<ul> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> </ul>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power	J J J	<ul> <li></li> &lt;</ul>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209:	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again.	٠ ٠ ٠	<ul> <li></li> &lt;</ul>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209: DOWNLOAD	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for	<i>✓</i> <i>✓</i> <i>✓</i>	· · ·
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209: DOWNLOAD ERROR	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will	<i>J</i> <i>J</i> <i>J</i>	<b>S</b> <b>S</b> <b>S</b> <b>S</b>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209: DOWNLOAD ERROR	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur)		<ul> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> </ul>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209: DOWNLOAD ERROR Service Call	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> <li>Detected illegal process with CU</li> </ol>	Yes Yes Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) Write down the 24 digit number		<ul> <li></li> <li></li></ul>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209: DOWNLOAD ERROR Service Call 203: Error 204: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error CU Program Dysfunction	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> <li>Detected illegal process with CU program.</li> </ol>	Yes Yes Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) Write down the 24 digit number displayed on the LCD panel and report it		
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209: DOWNLOAD ERROR Service Call 203: Error 204: Error 207: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error CU Program Dysfunction	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> <li>Detected illegal process with CU program.</li> </ol>	Yes Yes Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) Write down the 24 digit number displayed on the LCD panel and report it. Turn OEE the power Then		✓ ✓ ✓
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209: DOWNLOAD ERROR Service Call 203: Error 204: Error 207: Error to	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error CU Program Dysfunction	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> <li>Detected illegal process with CU program.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) Write down the 24 digit number displayed on the LCD panel and report it. Turn OFF the power. Then check the insertion of the CU		✓ ✓ ✓
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error to 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209: DOWNLOAD ERROR Service Call 203: Error 204: Error 204: Error 207: Error to 214: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error CU Program Dysfunction	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> <li>Detected illegal process with CU program.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) Write down the 24 digit number displayed on the LCD panel and report it. Turn OFF the power. Then check the insertion of the CU board. Now turn ON the power		✓ ✓ ✓
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209: DOWNLOAD ERROR Service Call 203: Error 204: Error 204: Error 207: Error to 214: Error Power Off/on	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error CU Program Dysfunction	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> <li>Detected illegal process with CU program.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) Write down the 24 digit number displayed on the LCD panel and report it. Turn OFF the power. Then check the insertion of the CU board. Now turn ON the power again.		
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209: DOWNLOAD ERROR Service Call 203: Error 204: Error 204: Error 207: Error to 214: Error Power Off/on nnn: p	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error CU Program Dysfunction	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> <li>Detected illegal process with CU program.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) Write down the 24 digit number displayed on the LCD panel and report it. Turn OFF the power. Then check the insertion of the CU board. Now turn ON the power again.		
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209: DOWNLOAD ERROR Service Call 203: Error 204: Error 204: Error 207: Error to 214: Error Power Off/on nnn: p 0×FOC: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error CU Program Dysfunction	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> <li>Detected illegal process with CU program.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) Write down the 24 digit number displayed on the LCD panel and report it. Turn OFF the power. Then check the insertion of the CU board. Now turn ON the power again.		<ul> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> <li>✓</li> </ul>
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error 209: DOWNLOAD ERROR Service Call 203: Error 204: Error 204: Error 207: Error to 214: Error Power Off/on nnn: p 0×FOC: Error 0×FOD: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error CU Program Dysfunction	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> <li>Detected illegal process with CU program.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) Write down the 24 digit number displayed on the LCD panel and report it. Turn OFF the power. Then check the insertion of the CU board. Now turn ON the power again.		
Service Call 189: Error Service Call 190: Error Service Call 200: Error to 202: Error Power On/off 209: DOWNLOAD ERROR Service Call 203: Error 204: Error 204: Error 204: Error 204: Error 204: Error Power Off/on nnn: p 0×FOC: Error 0×FFE: Error	Inverter Unit I/F Error System Memory Overflow PU Firm Download Error Custom Media Table Download Error CU Program Dysfunction	<ol> <li>Inverter communications error</li> <li>Does the Error take place again?</li> <li>System Memory Overflow</li> <li>Error occurred when downloading PU firmware.</li> <li>Failed to download custom media table.</li> <li>Detected illegal process with CU program.</li> </ol>	Yes	Check the connection of the I/F cable. Replace the V72-3 board. Power OFF/ON Replace CU PCB. (Replace EEPROM) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) After turning ON the power again, try downloading again. (This process isn't executed for regular operations, therefore, will not occur) Write down the 24 digit number displayed on the LCD panel and report it. Turn OFF the power. Then check the insertion of the CU board. Now turn ON the power again.		

Table 7-1-1 Operator Alarm (5/1)	Table	7-1-1	Operator	Alarm	(5/10)
----------------------------------	-------	-------	----------	-------	--------

				5/10)		
Display	Cause	Error Description and Analysis	judgment	Remedy	600	1200
Service Call	Print Satistic	HDD was removed or replaced		Get the original HDD back.	1	1
220: Error	mismatch	after print statistic is set to ON.				
Service Call	RFID Reader not	1) RFID read device error	Yes	Check the connection of the	1	1
230: Error	Installed	,		RFID R/W board.		
		2) Does the Error take place	Yes	Replace the RFID R/W board.		
		again?		Replace the S2V board.		
Service Call	RFID Reader I/F	An interface error was detected with		01: Same action as for error 230	1	1
231: Error	Error	the RFID reader device.		02: Replace the RFID R/W		
		01: communication error between the		board.		
		RFID reader and the engine PCB.		03: Check the connection of the		
		02: the transceiver circuit error of the		antenna cable.		
		RFID reader.		04: Check to confirm that the		
		03: communication error between the		number of REID tags is		
		RFID reader and the Tag chip.		correct.		
		(more than 4 chins)				
Sonvice Call	Engine Program	240: Elash-memory bardware error		If the error still occurs after	1	1
240: Error		241: Duplex flash-memory error		reporting replace the circuit		v
to		242: Optional tray-2 flash-memory error		board of the relevant unit		
245: Error		243: Optional tray-3 flash-memory error				
247: Error		244: Optional tray-4 flash-memory error				
248: Error		245: Optional tray-5 flash-memory error				
		247: Sub-CPU flash-memory error				
		248: Inverter flash-memory error				
Close the Cover	The printer engine	1) Check to see if the top cover is	Yes	Close top cover	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>	✓
Top Cover Open	cover is open.	open.				
		2) Check to see if the cover switch	No	Replace the cover switch.		
Please see		is normal.				
HELP for details	After territor ON the		Mar			
Reset fuser	After turning ON the	1) Is an Error message displayed?	Yes	Check now the fuser is mounted.	<b>_</b>	1
Fuser Ellor	is closed the conser	2) Doos the Error take place	INO	the power again		
Please see	detects that the unit	again?	Vac	Replace the Fuser Unit Assy		
HELP for details	is missing.		103			
Check paper	When media is	1) Has any abnormal substance get	Yes	Remove obstruction/impurity.	1	1
Paper thickness	missing, the sensor	mixed in with the sensor?	No	Normal		
error	output value is	2) Can the paper thickness detection				
TRAY	outside the standard	be reset and restored by opening/				
	value. (Only for	closing the tray?				
Please see	Factory Mode)	3) Is operation restored by turning				
HELP for details		OFF/ON the power?				
Check paper	Sensor Output	1) Has any abnormal substance get	Yes	Remove obstruction/impurity.	1	1
Paper thickness	Difference Value	mixed in with the sensor?	No	Normal		
Error	Outside Standard	2) Can the paper thickness detection				
	(Only for Factory Mode)	closing the trav?				
Please see		3) Is operation restored by turning				
HELP for details		OFE/ON the power?				
Check paper	Media Detection	1) Is there any abnormal media	Yes	Remove the abnormal media.	1	1
Paper thickness	Value Outside	mixed in?				
error	Standard	2) Has the media been fed as				
TRAY		overlapped sheets?				
Please see						
HELP for details					<u> </u>	
Uneck paper	U-Heavy Mode	is there any abnormal media	Yes	Remove the abnormal media.	<b>1</b>	~
Faper thickness	Value Outside	mixed in?				
	Standard					
	Stanualu					
Please see						
HELP for details						
1	1	1	1		1	

	Table 7-1-	1 Operator Alarm	(6/10)				
--	------------	------------------	--------				
Display         Cause         Error Description and Analysis         Perme Network         Remody         600         1200           Reset the bod         After huming OM         1) is a micro message displayed?         Ves         Check how the bed unit is monthed.         I         I         I         I         Incomessage displayed?         Ves         Check how the bod unit is monthed.         I         I         I         I         Incomessage displayed?         Ves         Check how the Dis monthed.         I         I         I         Incomessage displayed?         Ves         Check how the Dis monthed.         I         I         I         I         Incomessage displayed?         Ves         Check how the Dis monthed.         I         I         I         Incomessage displayed?         Ves         Check how the Dis monthed.         I         I         I         Incomessage displayed?         Ves         Check how the Dis monthed.         I         I         Incomessage displayed?         Ves         Check how the Dis monthed.         I         I         Incomessage displayed?         Ves         Check how the Dis monthed.         I         I         Incomessage displayed?         Ves         Check how the Dis monthed.         I         I         Incomessage displayed?         Ves         Check Liser Lise how the bis in mediately after replatin B					(10)		
--	------------------	------------------------	---------------------------------------	----------	--	----------	-----------------------
Reset the belt       Alter Luming ON The 1 (1) is an Enror message displayed? Places see 1 is the issue una property is the best unit is mounted. Not the prover or when cover 2 (2) is the best unit property mounted? Places see 1 is missing.       V       V         Places see 1 is missing.       1) to be the ror message displayed? Place details is missing.       Not the prover again. Not the prover again.       V       V         Places see 2 is the image dum property dum       10 best the ror message displayed? prover or when cover 2 is the image dum property mounted?       Not mounted?       Replace Bot Unit Assy       V       V         Places see 2 is the image dum property mounted?       10 best the form the unit is mounted. Tum ON power again.       V       V       V         Place the details is missing.       10 bunt Life       15 this immediately after replacing the liber?       No       Replace Ubit Life       V       V         Place to details       5 continually OFF)       15 this immediately after replacing the liber?       No       Replace Ubit Life       V       V         Places see HELP to details       Notify Bet Life (Aam)       Is this immediately after replacing the liber?       No       Replace dubit Life       V       V         Places see HELP to details       Notify Bet Life (Aam)       Is this immediately after replacing the liber of details       No       Replace dubit-side printer unit or replace engine PCB.       V       V <td>Display</td> <td>Cause</td> <td>Error Description and Analysis</td> <td>judgment</td> <td>Remedy</td> <td>600</td> <td>1200</td>	Display	Cause	Error Description and Analysis	judgment	Remedy	600	1200
power or when PEAPS over is doesd.         2 is the best unit properly mounter?         mounted. No Pease see the unit is missing.         mounted. No Pease see Pease see the unit is missing.         mounted. No Pease see the unit is missing.         Pease Pease see Pease see the Unit New Pease see Pease see Pease see Pease see Pease see PEAP for details         Dunit Life Is this immediately after replacing the Unit New Pease see Pease see Pease see PEAP for details         No         Replace ID Unit Life Pease see Pease see Pease see PEAP for details         I is this immediately after replacing the Unit New Pease see Pease see PEAP for details         Version Pease see Pease see PEAP for details         Check Fuser Life Pease see PEAP for details         I is this immediately after replacing the Unit New Pease See PEAP for details         Version Pease See PEAP for details         Check Fuser Life Pease See PEAP for details         Version Pease See PEAP for details         Check Fuser Life Pease See PEAP for details         I is this immediately after replacing the Unit New Pease See PEAP for details         No         Replace whit Pease See Pease See PEAP for details         Version Pease See Print Neuront         Pease See Print Pease Pease See Printer Unit is disassembled from this machine.         Are oparations restored by re- instructure the balle set Printer Unit is disassemble for printer unit Pease See Printer Unit is disassemble for printer unit Pease See PEAP for details         Remove the paper jam. Pease See Pease See Pease See Pease See Pease See Pease See Pease See PEAP for details         Pease See Pease See PEAP for details         Pear Jam Pease See Pease Se	Reset the belt	After turning ON the	1) Is an Error message displayed?	Yes	Check how the belt unit is	1	1
Please see cover is closed, the mounted? No Redmout the bet unit, then turn ON the power again. Second dets that is missing. Please see detains the unit sension of the turn of the institute of the power again. Second the turn of the turn of the turn of the power again. Second the turn of the turn of the power again. Second the turn of the turn of turn of the power again. Second the turn of turn		power or when	2) Is the best unit properly		mounted.		
HELP for details         server detects that         3)         Does the Error take place again?         No         Rescape comparison         Check how the D is mounted.         Image: Check	Please see	cover is closed, the	mounted?	No	Re0mount the belt unit, then turn		
Instruction         Instruction         Notes         Replace Bell Link Assy         Image         Notes           Reset the image         Aller turing (AN term)         Aller turing (AN term)         Notes         Yes         Check how the D is mound.         Image         Imag	HELP for details	sensor detects that	3) Does the Error take place again?		ON the power again.		
Reset the image dum dum dum dum s doad, the sensor s doad,		the unit is missing.		Yes	Replace Belt Unit Assy		
drum         power of when cover         2) is the image drum properly mounde?         No         Replace ID Unit Assy         In           Please see theLP for delais mound         ID Unit Life         is this immediately after replacing the ID unit?         Yes         Check ID Unit Life         I         I         I         I         I         In	Reset the image	After turning ON the	1) Is an Error message displayed?	Yes	Check how the ID is mounted.	1	1
Is closed, the sensor HELP for details is missing the vertice bid close that the unit         3) Does the Error take place again?         No         Replace ID Unit Assy Replace with a bid Dunit Life bid Dunit?         So No         Replace ID Unit Assy         I           Please see End COLOR         ID Unit Life bid COLOR         Is this immediately after replacing the ID unit?         Yes Please see the User Life continuity OFF)         So No         Replace ID Unit Assy         I         I           Please see Fuser Life Near-End Color Fuser Life Near-End Control details         Fuser Life (This takes place with a the fuser / life is continuity OFF)         Is this immediately after replacing the bet?         Yes No         Check Fuser Life Replace fuser.         I         /           Replace with Replace with control details         Notify Bert Life (Marm)         Is this immediately after replacing the bet?         Yes No         Check Bert Life No         Check Bert Life No         I         /           Replace with Replace with disassembled from this machine.         Is this immediately after replacing the bet?         Yes No         No         Replace double-side printer unit or replace double-side printer unit.         I         I           Please see HELP for details         P	drum	power or when cover	2) Is the image drum properly		Turn ON power again.		
Please see wardum Drum Life Near End COLOR       ID Unit Life wardum Drum Life Near- End COLOR       ID Unit Life wardum Drum Life Near- End COLOR       Is this immediately after replacing the ID unit?       Yes No       Check ID Unit Life No       IC       IC         Please see HELP for details       Is this immediately after replacing the UD unit?       Yes No       Check ID Unit Life No       IC       IC         Please see HELP for details       Is this immediately after replacing the fuser Life continually OFF)       Is this immediately after replacing the belt?       Yes No       Check Euser Life No       IC       IC         Please see HELP for details       No       Replace with a continually OFF)       Is this immediately after replacing the belt?       Yes No       Check Euser Life No       IC       IC         Please see HELP for details       Notify Bet Life No       Is this immediately after replacing the belt?       Yes No       Normal       IC       IC         Please see HELP for details       Print N-count disassembled from this machine.       Aro operations restored by re- new duble-side printer unit disassembled from this machine.       Aro operations restored by re- new duble-side printer.       Yes No       Normal       IC       IC         Please see HELP for details       Print N-count disassembled from this machine.       Aro operations restored by re- new duble-side printer.       Yes No       Replace duble-side printer unit.		is closed, the sensor	mounted?				
HELP for details       is missing.       additional state information of the intermediately after replacing to the intereceptot the intermediately after replacing to the int	Please see	detects that the unit	3) Does the Error take place again?	No	Replace ID Unit Assy		
Replace with a mew dum       ID Unit Life       Is this immediately after replacing the ID Unit       Yes       Check ID Unit       IV       IV         Dum Lie Near-End       Check To details       IV       IV       Replace tilto       IV       IV <t< td=""><td>HELP for details</td><td>is missing.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>	HELP for details	is missing.					
new drum Dum Like Near- End COLOR Please see HELP for details Replace with a fuser Life (This takes place when the fuser? life is continually OFF) Please see Near-End continually OFF) Please see NELP for details Over paper. Please see NELP for details Over paper. Please see HELP for details Over paper. Please see HELP for details Over paper. Please see HELP for details Over Check Capiter and detected in double-side printer Check Cupiex Please see HELP for details Over paper gram. Check misfeed in double-side printer. Check Cheplace Cassette 1, 2, 3, A or 5. Please see HELP for details Over Cheplace Cassette 1, 2, 3, A or 5. Please see HELP for details Over Paper jam in Check misfeed in the specified paper supply from Check the load on the fuser. No Replace fuser unit. No Replace fuser unit	Replace with a	ID Unit Life	Is this immediately after replacing	Yes	Check ID Unit Life	1	1
Dum Lie Near- End COLOR       Please see HELP for details       Is this immediately after replacing the fuser it for details       Vest       Check Fuser Life       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Is this immediately after replacing the fuser if is near-End       Yes       Check Fuser Life       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Is this immediately after replacing the fuser if is near-End       Yes       Check Belt Life       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Print N-count worth by opening/ closing cover.       Is this immediately after replacing the belt?       Yes       Check Belt Life No       No       Replace belt.       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Print N-count worth by opening/ closing cover.       Is the belt?       No       Normal       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Print N-count worth by opening/ closasembled from this machine.       Check paper jam in double-side Printer inserting the Double-Side Printer worth       No       Replace double-side printer unit or replace engine PCB.       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Check paper jam in double-side with wen turing hELP for details       Check paper jam in double-side printer.       Yes       Remove the paper jam. worth       ✓       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Paper jam in paper suppy from printer.       Check replace d	new drum		the ID unit?	No	Replace ID Unit		
End COLOR       COLOR       Please see       Image: see set of the set of	Drum Life Near-						
CJUDH       Please see       HELP for details       Final State Stat	End						
Please see HELP for details       Fuser Life (This takes place when the fuser it is continually OFF)       Is this immediately after replacing to continually OFF)       Yes No       Check Fuser Life Replace fuser.       Check Fuser Life Replace fuser.       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Notify Belt Life (Alarm) closing cover.       Is this immediately after replacing the belt?       Yes No       Check Belt Life Replace double-side printer unit.       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Notify Belt Life (Alarm) closing cover.       Is this immediately after replacing the belt?       Yes No       Check Belt Life Replace double-side printer unit.       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Are operations restored by re- mew double-side printer unit printer unit       Are operations restored by re- mew double-side printer unit printer.       Yes No       Normal Replace double-side printer unit or replace engine PCB.       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Check paper jam in double-side printer.       Check paper jam in double-side printer.       Yes No       Remove the paper jam. Check/replace double-side printer unit.       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Check misfed in double-side printer.       Yes No       Remove the paper jam. Check/replace double-side printer unit.       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       paper jam in paper supply from paper supply from papar supply from paper supply from paper supply from cas	COLOR						
Prease see HELP for details       Is this immediately after replacing work user       Yes       Check Fuser Life       /         Replace with a new fuser       takes place when the fuser life is continually OFF)       Is this immediately after replacing to continually OFF)       Yes       Check Fuser Life       /         Please see HELP for details       is this immediately after replacing to continually OFF)       Yes       Check Belt Life Replace with work by opening/ closing cover.       Is this immediately after replacing the belt?       Yes       Check Belt Life Replace belt.       /       /         Please see HELP for details       filt the Double-Side printer Unit is disassembled in double-side printer.       If the Double-Side printer unit?       Yes       Normal       /       /       /         Please see HELP for details       Paper jam detected in double-side printer.       Check paper jam in double-side printer.       No       Replace double-side printer unit.       /       /         Please see HELP for details       Paper jam in printer.       Check paper jam in double-side printer.       Yes       Remove the paper jam. No       Check/replace double-side printer unit.       /       /         Please see HELP for details       Or details printer unit.       Check misfeed in double-side printer.       Yes       Remove the majer double-side printer unit.       /       /         Please see HELP for details	Discourse						
HELP for dealas         Fuser Life (This is this immediately after replacing yes continually OFF)         Statistic is the fuser life is continually OFF)         Vest optimization of the fuser life is continually OFF)         Vest optimization of the fuser life is continually OFF)         Vest optimization of the fuser life is continually OFF)         Vest optimization of the fuser life is continually OFF)         Vest fuser life is continually of the fuser replacing is continually of the fuser replacing is continually of the belt?         Vest fuser life is continually of the fuser replacing is continually of the belt?         Vest fuser life is continut is continually of the	Please see						
replace wind a       ruser Life (This new fuser       is this immediately after replacing the fuser (ife sontunally OFF)       v       v       v       v         Fuser Life fuser curve sear-End       takes place when the fuser (ife is continually OFF)       is this immediately after replacing the belt?       Ves       Replace fuser.       Ves       Replace fuser.       v       v         Please see HELP for details       Normal       Is this immediately after replacing (Aam)       Ves       Check Belt Life Replace belt.       Ves       Check Belt Life Replace belt.       v       v         Please see HELP for details       If the Double-Side from this machine.       Are operations restored by re- inserting the Double-Side Printer Unit?       Yes       Normal       Ves       Replace double-side printer unit or replace of double-side printer unit or replace double-side printer unit.       V       V         Please see HELP for details       Check paper jam in double-side printer.       Yes       Remove the paper jam. Ocheck/replace double-side printer unit.       V       V         Please see double-side printer unit.       Check misfeed in double-side printer.       Yes       Remove the misfed paper, insert unit.       V       V         Please see duble-side printer unit.       Check misfeed in the specified cassette.       Yes       Remove the misfed paper, insert unit.       V       V         Please see HELP	HELP for details	Fuer Life (This	la this immediately often yould since	N	Chask Every Life		
Inter Under Inser Life       Inter Luser / continually OFF)       Inter Luser / inter Luser / continually OFF)       Inter Luser / inter Luser / continually OFF)       Inter Luser / inter	Replace with a	Fuser Life (Triis	is this inmediately after replacing	Yes		<b>~</b>	· ·
I user Line continually OFF)In the load mer is continually OFF)Is this immediately after replacing the belt?Yes No Replace with Replace belt.Check Belt Life Replace belt.✓Replace with new belt Belt Life Near- Print N-count wint by opening/ closing cover.Is this immediately after replacing the belt?Yes No Replace belt.Check Belt Life Replace belt.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsIf the Double-Side inserting the Double-Side Printer inserting the Double-Side Printer inter Unit is induble-side printer Unit is induble-side printer induble-side printer unit.Yes Remove the paper jam. Printer.No Replace double-side printer unit or replace engine PCB.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected induble-side printer.Check paper jam in double-side printer.Yes No Check/replace double-side printer unit.Remove the paper jam. or replace engine PCB.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected in double-side printer unit.Check paper jam in double-side printer.Yes No Check/replace double-side printer unit.Kes Remove the paper jam. or check/replace double-side printer unit.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam in paper supply from Cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Check misfeed in the specified year paper.Yes No Check/replace double-side printer unit.Kes Remove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam in paper supply from Cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 o	Fusor Life	the fuser life is		INO	Replace luser.		
Hear-Lad       Continuenty OF 17       Please see       Please s	Near-End						
Please see HELP for details       Notify Belt Life (Alarm)       Is this immediately after replacing the belt?       Yes No       Check Belt Life (Replace belt.       Image: Check Belt Life (Alarm)       Image: Ch	INeal-Lilu	continually OFF)					
HELP for detailsNotify Belt Life (Alarm) Belt Life Near- Print N-count worth by opening/ closing cover.Is this immediately after replacing the belt?Yes NoCheck Belt Life Replace belt.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsIf the Double-Side from this machine.Are operations restored by re- inserting the Double-Side Printer Uni?Yes NoNormal✓✓Please see HELP for detailsIf the Double-Side from this machine.Are operations restored by re- inserting the Double-Side Printer Uni?Yes NoReplace double-side printer unit or replace engine PCB.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected in double-side printer.Check paper jam in double-side printer.Yes NoRemove the paper jam. Check/replace double-side printer unit.✓✓Please see double-side printer unit.Check misfeed in double-side printer.Check misfeed in double-side printer.Yes NoRemove the paper jam. Check/replace double-side printer unit.✓✓Please see the double-side printer unit.Check misfeed in double-side printer unit.Yes Remove the misfed paper, then close cover.✓✓Please see the double-side printer unit.Check misfeed in the specified cassette.Yes Remove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓✓Please see the double-side printer unit.Check misfeed in the specified cassette.Yes Remove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓✓Open cover paper jam paper gam d	Please see						
Replace with Belt Life Near- End Worth by opening/ closing cover. HELP for details Printer Unit is mew double-side printer unit obuble-Side From this machine. Please see HELP for details Pease see HELP for details Printer Unit is moduble-side printer unit. Check Duplex Paper jam detected for details Please see the double-side printer unit. Check misfeed in the specified printer unit. Check misfeed in the specified printer unit. Check/replace Cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5. Please see HELP for details Paper jam in paper supply from paper supply from feator betails Paper Jam detected betwe	HELP for details						
Inclusion timeRelationInterfactory betrationInterfactory betrationInterfactory betrationInterfactory betrationBett Life Near- EndPrint N-count worth by opening closing cover.File belt?NoReplace belt.PerinterInterfactory betrationInterfactory betrati	Replace with	Notify Belt Life	Is this immediately after replacing	Yes	Check Belt Life		./
Beit Life Near- End       Print N-count worth by opening/ closing cover.       Print N-count worth by opening/ close cover.       V       V         Please see HELP for details       Paper jam in paper supply from printer unit.       Check misfeed in double-side printer unit.       Yes No close cover.       Remove the misfed paper, then close cover.       V       V         Please see HELP for details       paper jam in paper supply from close cover.       Check misfeed in the specified printer unit.       Yes No close cover.       Remove the misfed paper, insert unit.       V       V         Please see HELP for details       Paper jam in paper supply from close cover.       1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.       Yes No close cover bapaer jam. Yellow ID and	new belt	(Alarm)	the belt?	No	Beplace belt	•	·
Endworth by opening/ closing cover.worth by opening closing closing cover.worth by opening closing closin	Belt Life Near-	Print N-count		1.00			
Closing cover.closing cover.closin	End	worth by opening/					
Please see HELP for details       If the Double-Side Printer Unit is disassembled from this machine.       Are operations restored by re- inserting the Double-Side Printer Unit?       Yes No       Normal Replace double-side printer unit or replace engine PCB.       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Paper jam detected in double-side printer unit when turning HELP for details       Check paper jam in double-side printer.       Yes No       Remove the paper jam. Check/replace double-side printer unit.       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Open cover paper jam in paper supply from Qeen cover       Check masfeed in the specified printer unit.       Yes No       Remove the masfed paper, then close cover.       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Unit?       Check misfeed in double-side printer.       Yes No       Remove the masfed paper, then close cover.       ✓       ✓         Please see HELP for details       Unit.       Check misfeed in the specified paper supply form paper supply form paper supply form cassette.       Check misfeed in the specified paper jam hepaper jam hepaper jam hepaper jam between paper supply form cassette.       Yes Remove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.       ✓       ✓         Open cover Paper jam Paper jam detected between Paper jam detected between Paper jam detected between Top cover       1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.       Yes Please see HELP for details       Remove the paper jam. Yellow ID and fuser.       Yes Please fuser unit.       Re		closing cover.					
HELP for detailsvector <td>Please see</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	Please see						
Replace with new double-side printer Unit is disassembled from this machine.Are operations restored by re- inserting the Double-Side Printer Unit?Yes No No No No Replace double-side printer unit or replace engine PCB.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsCheck paper jam detected in double-side printer unit when turning HELP for detailsCheck paper jam in double-side printer.Yes No No No No No No No No No No No Check/replace double-side printer unit.✓✓Please see unit when turning HELP for detailsCheck paper jam in double-side printer.Yes No No No Check/replace double-side printer unit.Remove the paper jam. Check/replace double-side printer unit.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsCheck paper jam in double-side printer.Yes No No Check/replace double-side printer unit.Remove the misfed paper, then close cover.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam in paper supply from paper supply from paper supply from Quert etailsCheck misfeed in the specified cassette.Yes No No NoRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam in paper supply from detected between YesCheck misfeed in the specified cassette.Yes No NoRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected between Yes1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes NoRemove the paper jam. No No	HELP for details						
new double-side printer unit inter unit idiaassembled from this machine.Inserting the Double-Side Printer Unit?No Pelase see HELP for detailsReplace double-side printer unit or replace engine PCB.Image: Construction of the paper printer unit.Image: Construction of the paper printer unit.	Replace with	If the Double-Side	Are operations restored by re-	Yes	Normal	1	1
printer unit Please see HELP for detailsdisassembled from this machine.Unit?or replace engine PCB.IIIPlease see hell printer unit when turning HELP for detailsPaper jam detected in double-side printer unit.Check paper jam in double-side printer.Yes printer.Remove the paper jam. Check/replace double-side printer unit.✓✓Please see detected in detected in maper supply form Check DuplesPaper jam in paper jam in paper supply from paper jam in paper supply from CoreckCheck misfeed in double-side printer unit.Yes Pamer turnit.Remove the maper jam. Check/replace double-side printer unit.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam in paper supply from cassette.Check misfeed in double-side printer unit.Yes Pamer double-side printer unit.Remove the misfed paper, then close cover.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsCheck misfeed in the specified vant.Yes Pamer dam cassette.Remove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓✓Open cover Paper Jam detected between Top coverPaper jam detected between Yes1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes Paper fuser unit.Remove the paper jam. the cassette unit.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected between YesPaper due the paper jam. Paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected between YesPaper due the paper jam. Paper jam.✓✓Ple	new double-side	Printer Unit is	inserting the Double-Side Printer	No	Replace double-side printer unit		
Please see HELP for detailsfrom this machine.Check is machine.Check paper jam printer.Yes printer.Remove the paper jam. Check/replace double-side printer unit.Image: Check paper jam printer.Image: Check paper jam printer. </td <td>printer unit</td> <td>disassembled</td> <td>Unit?</td> <td></td> <td>or replace engine PCB.</td> <td></td> <td></td>	printer unit	disassembled	Unit?		or replace engine PCB.		
Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected in double-side printer unit when turning HELP for detailsCheck paper jam in double-side printer.Ves Please see unit when turning unit.Remove the paper jam. unit.Ves Ves Please see unit.Remove the paper jam. unit.Ves Ves Ves Ves Remove the paper jam. NoVes Check/replace double-side printer unit.Ves Ves Ves Check/replace Cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Ves Ves Ves Ves Ves Ves Check/replace fuser unit.Ves <br< td=""><td></td><td>from this machine.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></br<>		from this machine.					
HELP for detailsMedicationMethod logMethod log	Please see						
Check Duplex in double-side printer unit when turning HELP for detailsPaper jam detected in double-side printer unit when turning detected in detected in detected in detected in maper supply from Check DuplexCheck paper jam in double-side printer.Yes NoRemove the paper jam. Check/replace double-side printer unit.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected in paper supply from paper supply from COver Paper Jam in paper supply from COVERCheck misfeed in double-side printer unit.Yes NoRemove the paper jam. Check/replace double-side printer unit.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam in paper supply from cossette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Check misfeed in the specified cassette.Yes NoRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓✓Open cover Paper Jam COVERPaper jam paper supply from cossette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes Semove the paper jam.Remove the paper jam.✓✓Open cover Paper Jam CoverPaper jam paper jam1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes Semove the paper jam.Remove the paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsLand paper jam1) Check the load on the fuser unit.Yes Semove the paper jam.Remove the paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected between fuser.1) Check the load on the fuser unit.Yes Semove the paper jam.Remove the paper jam.✓✓	HELP for details						
In double-side printer Please see HELP for detailsprinter.NoCheck/replace double-side printer unit.Image: Construct of the construction of the	Check Duplex	Paper jam detected	Check paper jam in double-side	Yes	Remove the paper jam.	1	1
Please see HELP for detailsunit when turning over paper.unit.unit.unit.unit.Check Duplex detected in detected in paper supply from HELP for detailsPaper jam in paper supply from paper supply from paper supply from Please seeCheck misfeed in double-side printer unit.Yes NoRemove the misfed paper, then close cover.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam in paper supply from paper supply from paper supply from Check misfeed in the specified Paper jam in paper supply from close cover.Yes NoRemove the misfed paper, then close cover.✓✓Open cover Paper jam in paper supply from COVERCheck misfeed in the specified classette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes NoRemove the paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam paper supply from paper supply from COVERCheck paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes NoRemove the paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes SRemove the paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected between fuser.1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes SRemove the paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsCheck ID and fuser.2) Check the load on the fuser unit.NoReplace fuser unit.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsFaper jam fuser.2) Check the loa		in double-side printer	printer.	No	Check/replace double-side printer		
HELP for details Check DuplexPaper jam detected in detected in duble-side printerCheck paper jam in double-side printer.Yes NoRemove the paper jam. Check/replace double-side printer unit.Image: Check paper jam. replace double-side printer unit.Image: Check paper jam. replace double-side printer unit.Image: Check paper jam. paper jam in paper supply from paper supply from paper jam in paper jam in paper supply from paper supply from paper supply from Please see HELP for detailsCheck misfeed in double-side printer unit.Yes NoRemove the misfed paper, then close cover.Image: Check misfeed in double-side printer unit.Image: Check misfeed in the specified close cover.Yes NoRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.Image: Check misfeed in the specified close cover.Yes NoRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.Image: Check misfeed in the specified close cover.Yes NoRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.Image: Check misfeed in the specified close cover.Yes NoRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.Image: Check misfeed in the specified close cover.Yes NoRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.Image: Check misfeed in the specified close cover.Yes NoRemove the misfeed paper, insert the cassette.Image: Check misfeed in the specified close cover.Yes NoRemove the misfeed paper, insert the cassette.Image: Check misfeed in the specified close cover.Image: Check misfeed in the specified close cover.Yes NoRemove the misfeed paper jam.Image: Check misfeed in the speci	Please see	unit when turning			unit.		
Check Duplex detected in detected in HELP for detailsPaper jam detected in unit.Check paper jam in double-side printer.Yes No Check/replace double-side printer unit.YYPlease see HELP for detailsPaper jam in paper supply from paper supply from paper supply from Please see HELP for detailsCheck misfeed in double-side printer unit.Yes No Check/replace double-side printer unit.YYPlease see HELP for detailsPaper jam in paper supply from paper supply from cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Check misfeed in the specified cassette.Yes No Check/replace double-side printer unit.YYPlease see HELP for detailsPaper jam in paper supply from cassette.Check misfeed in the specified cassette.Yes No Check/replace Cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Yes Yes Remove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.YPlease see HELP for details1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes Yes Yes Remove the paper jam.Yes Yes Yes Yes Remove the paper jam.YPaper Jam Yes Paper Jam1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes Yes Yes Yes Remove the paper jam.Yes Yes Yes Remove the paper jam.Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes Remove the paper jam.YYPaper Jam Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes Remove the paper jam.Yes Ye	HELP for details	over paper.					
Delase seedetected in double-side printerprinter.NoCheck/replace double-side printer unit.out.Please seePaper jam in paper supply from Please seeCheck misfeed in double-side printer unit.YesRemove the misfed paper, then close cover.✓✓Please seethe double-side printer unit.Check misfeed in the specified close cover.YesRemove the misfed paper, insert unit.✓✓Open cover Paper jam Paper supply from COVERCassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Check misfeed in the specified cassette.YesRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓✓Please see HELP for details1)Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.YesRemove the paper jam.✓✓Open cover Paper Jam Paper jam detected between fuser.1)Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.YesRemove the paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for details2)Check the load on the fuser unit.NoReplace fuser unit.✓✓Please see HELP for details2)Check the load on the fuser unit.NoReplace fuser unit.✓✓	Check Duplex	Paper jam	Check paper jam in double-side	Yes	Remove the paper jam.	-	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
Please see       double-side printer       unit.       u	Discourse	detected in	printer.	No	Check/replace double-side printer		
HELP for detailsUnit.Check misfeed in double-side printer unit.YesRemove the misfed paper, then close cover.Image: Close cover.Please seethe double-side printer unit.printer unit.NoCheck/replace double-side printer unit.Image: Close cover.Open coverPaper jam in paper supply from paper supply from COVERCheck misfeed in the specified cassette.YesRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.Image: Close cover.COVERCassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.YesRemove the paper jam.Image: Close cover.Open coverPaper jam detected between fuser.1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.YesRemove the paper jam.Image: Close cover.Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected between fuser.1) Check the load on the fuser unit.YesRemove the paper jam.Image: Close cover.Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected between fuser.2) Check the load on the fuser unit.NoReplace fuser unit.Image: Close cover.Please see HELP for detailsSee close2) Check the load on the fuser unit.NoReplace fuser unit.Image: Close cover.	Please see	double-side printer			unit.		
Check bublexPaper jain in paper supply from printer unit.Check misteed in double-side printer unit.TesRemove the mistee paper, ment close cover.VVPlease see HELP for detailsPaper jam in paper supply from paper supply from COVERCheck misfeed in the specified cassette.YesRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓✓COVER HELP for detailsCassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.YesRemove the paper jam.✓✓Open cover Paper jam Paper jam Top coverPaper jam Black ID and fuser.1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.YesRemove the paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for details2) Check the load on the fuser unit.YesRemove the paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam fuser.1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.YesRemove the paper jam.✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam fuser.2) Check the load on the fuser unit.NoReplace fuser unit.I	Check Dupley	Unit. Deper iom in	Check mistage in double side	Vaa	Remove the misfed paper then		
Please see HELP for detailsthe double-side printer unit.printer unit.NoCheck/replace double-side printer unit.Open cover Paper Jam COVERPaper jam in paper supply from CASSette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Check misfeed in the specified cassette.Yes NoRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsCassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes Paper JamRemove the paper jam.✓✓Open cover Paper JamPaper jam turit.1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes NoRemove the paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for details2) Check the load on the fuser unit.NoReplace fuser unit.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsFlack ID and fuser.2) Check the load on the fuser unit.NoReplace fuser unit.Flack fuser unit.Image: fuser unit.	Check Duplex	Paper jam in	check misteed in double-side	res	Remove the misted paper, then	<b>·</b>	×
Hease seeIne double-sideIne double-sideInter unit.HELP for detailsprinter unit.Check misfeed in the specified cassette.YesRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓Open coverPaper jam a or 5.Cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Check misfeed in the specified cassette.YesRemove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected between fuser.1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.YesRemove the paper jam.✓Please see HELP for details2) Check the load on the fuser unit.YesRemove the paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsPaper jam fuser.2) Check the load on the fuser unit.NoReplace fuser unit.Ferlace fuser unit.	Plassa soo	the double side		No	Chock/roplace double side printer		
Incluind detailsPaper jam in paper supply from paper supply from COVERCheck misfeed in the specified cassette.Yes Yes A or 5.Remove the misfed paper, insert the cassette.✓✓Please see HELP for detailsA or 5.1)Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes YesRemove the paper jam.✓✓Open cover Paper Jam to poer coverPaper jam detected between fuser.1)Check the load on the fuser unit.Yes YesRemove the paper jam.✓✓Please see HELP for details2)Check the load on the fuser unit.NoReplace fuser unit.Ferrore FerroreReplace fuser unit.Ferrore FerroreFerror	HELP for details	ninter unit		NO	unit		
Paper Jampaper supply from cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.cassette.NoHendre cassette.NoPlease see HELP for detailsPaper jam detected between fuser.1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.YesRemove the paper jam.✓Please see HELP for details2) Check the load on the fuser unit.YesRemove the paper jam.✓✓	Open cover	Paner iam in	Check misfeed in the specified	Yes	Bemove the misfed paper insert		./
COVERCassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.NoCheck/replace Cassette 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.Please see HELP for details1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.YesRemove the paper jam.Open cover Paper JamPaper jam detected between fuser.1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.YesRemove the paper jam.Top cover Please see HELP for detailsBlack ID and fuser.2) Check the load on the fuser unit.NoReplace fuser unit.	Paper Jam	naper supply from	cassette	103	the cassette	ľ	, v
Over Interview       4 or 5.         Please see       HELP for details         Open cover       Paper jam         Please see       1) Check paper jam between         Yellow ID and fuser.       Yellow ID and fuser.         Top cover       Black ID and fuser.         Please see       Yellow ID and fuser.         HELP for details       Yellow ID and fuser.         Please see       HELP for details	COVER	Cassette 1 2 3		No	Check/replace Cassette 1 2 3		
Please see HELP for details     Paper jam     1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.     Yes     Remove the paper jam.     ✓       Top cover     Black ID and fuser.     2) Check the load on the fuser unit.     No     Replace fuser unit.     Image: Comparison of the paper jam.     ✓		4 or 5.			4 or 5.		
HELP for detailsImage: Constraint of the sector	Please see						
Open cover Paper jamPaper jam detected between1) Check paper jam between Yellow ID and fuser.Yes Remove the paper jam.Remove the paper jam.Image: ComparisonTop coverBlack ID and fuser.2) Check the load on the fuser unit.NoReplace fuser unit.Image: ComparisonImage: Comparison </td <td>HELP for details</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	HELP for details						
Paper Jam     detected between     Yellow ID and fuser.       Top cover     Black ID and fuser.     2) Check the load on the fuser unit.       Please see       HELP for details	Open cover	Paper jam	1) Check paper jam between	Yes	Remove the paper jam.	1	1
Top cover       Black ID and fuser.       2) Check the load on the fuser unit.       No       Replace fuser unit.       No       Replace fuser unit.         Please see       HELP for details       Image: Check the load on the fuser       Image: Check the loa	Paper Jam	detected between	Yellow ID and fuser.		in the states of		
fuser.     unit.       Please see     Image: Comparison of the second o	Top cover	Black ID and	2) Check the load on the fuser	No	Replace fuser unit.		
Please see HELP for details	. 	fuser.	unit.				
HELP for details	Please see						
	HELP for details						

Table 7-1-1 Operator Alarm (7/10)

			, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	5/10/		
Display	Cause	Error Description and Analysis	judgment	Remedy	600	1200
Open cover	Paper jam	1) Check for paper jam inside the	Yes	Remove the paper jam.	1	1
Paper Jam	detected in fuser	fuser and between the Yellow				
Top cover	or between fuser	ID and fuser.	No	Replace paper output switch.		
	and paper output	2) Check if the paper output				
Please see	area.	switch is normal.				
HELP for details						
Open cover	Paper jam	Check the entrance or inside the	Yes	Remove the paper jam.	<b>~</b>	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
	naner started to		INO	unit		
	enter double-side					
Please see	printer unit.					
HELP for details						
Open cover	Some sort of jam	JAM CHECK	Yes	Remove the paper jam.	1	1
Paper Jam	occurred in paper					
Side cover	feed route.					
Please see						
HELP for details	Departies detected	1) Check for paper icm around	Vaa	Demove the nener iem		
Paper Jam	between cassette	the cassette and between the	res	Remove the paper jam.	<b>`</b>	<b>`</b>
	and black ID	Yellow ID				
001211		2) Check to see if the paper	No	Replace the entry switch.		
Please see		entry switch is normal.				
HELP for details						
Check paper	Printer engine detects	1) Is the paper a custom size?	Yes	Remedy Unnecessary	1	1
Paper size error	paper that is	2) Is the paper a standard size?	Yes	Adjust the cassette paper size		
TRAY	abnormal (45mm or			guide.		
	more) according to		No	Paper Size Switch Replace.		
Please see	setting.					
Change Toner	One of the toners	1) The specified toper cartridge is	Yes	Beplace with a new toner kit	1	1
COLOR	are almost empty.	almost empty.	No	Replace the specified toner sensor.	•	ľ
		2) Check to see if the specified				
Please see		toner sensor is normal.				
HELP for details						
Remove Paper	Paper Output	1) Check if the stacker is full.	Yes	Remove paper from stacker.	1	1
Stacker	Stacker is Full	2) Check if the Stacker Full	No	Replace the Stacker Full Sensor.		
		Sensor activator is normal.				
HELP for details						
Insert paper	Specified Cassette	1) Check if MT is Out-Of-Paper.	Yes	Put paper in MT.	1	1
MP Tray	is Out-Of-Paper or	2) Check and see if the out-of-	No	Replace Out-Of-Paper Sensor.		-
MEDIA SIZE	removed. Or the	paper sensor activator is				
	cassette used in	normal.				
Please see	the printing process					
HELP for details	is out-of-paper.					
Insert paper	Cassette 1, 2, 3,	1) Check and see if the specified	Yes	Put paper in specified cassette.	1	1
	40r 5 has been	cassette is out-of-paper.	INO	Replace the corresponding out-or-		
WEDIA SIZE	Of-Paper	2) Check and see if the out-of-		paper sensor.		
Please see		normal.				
HELP for details						
	Fuser Counter	1) Is an Error message displayed?	Yes	Check the Fuser Unit Life	1	1
Replace Fuser	Exceed Life	2) Is this immediately after the fuser	No	Replace the fuser immediately or at		
		unit was replaced?		the next maintenance.		
	Paper Near-End	Is the tray paper level low? (less	Yes	Refill with paper.	1	1
Tray*Paper	Detection	than about 30 sheets)	No	Check Paper Near-End Sensor		
Almost Finished	Connot	In these any every in the second	NL-	Charle the mercul was to a set		
	Cannot write to	is mere any error in the opera-		dures	1	
<n></n>			Yes	HDD malfunction		
				Benlace HDD		

Tahla	7-1-1	Operator	Δlarm	(8/10)
rable	/	Operator	Alann	(0/10)

Display	Cause	Error Description and Analysis	judgment	Remedy	600	1200
Power Off/on	GDDC Error	910: Tray1 GDDC Error		Check to confirm that the tray is	1	1
910: Error		911: Tray2 GDDC Error		mounted correctly.		
to		912: Tray3 GDDC Error		Replace the geared motor of the		
914: Error		913: Tray4 GDDC Error		tray.		
		914: Tray3 GDDC Error				
Power Off/on	Belt Slit Sensor	The belt is not running properly.		Check to confirm that the belt is	1	✓
917: Error	Error	Does the error message still		mounted correctly.		
		appear after rebooting?	Yes	Replace the belt.		
Power Off/on	Duplex FAN0	Error of the fan in the duplex		Check to confirm that the duplex	1	1
918: Error	Alarm Detection	unit		unit is mounted correctly.		
			Yes	Check the connection of the fan.		
		Does the error still occur after	Yes	Replace the fan.		
Power Off/on	Dupley 24V	24 V of power is not supplied to		Check to confirm that the dupley	1	
919. Error	Abnormal Current	the duplex unit properly		unit is mounted correctly		ř
STO. EITOI	Detection	the duplex unit property.	Yes	Check the connection of the fan		
	Detection	Does the error still occur after	Yes	Beplace the fan		
		rebooting?	100			
Power Off/on	Yellow Image	The Y ID unit is not operating		Check to confirm that the Y ID	1	1
920: Error	Drum Lock Error	properly.		unit is in position.		
		Does the error message still	Yes	Replace the Y ID unit.		
		appear after rebooting?	Yes	Replace the Y ID motor.		
Power Off/on	Magenta Image	The M ID unit is not operating		Check to confirm that the M ID	1	1
921: Error	Drum Lock Error	properly.		unit is in position.		
		Does the error message still	Yes	Replace the M ID unit.		
		appear after rebooting?	Yes	Replace the M ID motor.		
Power Off/on	Cyan Image Drum	The C ID unit is not operating		Check to confirm that the C ID	1	1
922: Error	Lock Error	properly.		unit is in position.		
		Does the error message still	Yes	Replace the C ID unit.		
		appear after rebooting?	Yes	Replace the C ID motor.		
Power Off/on	Black Image Drum	The K ID unit is not operating		Check to confirm that the K ID	1	1
923: Error	Lock Error	properly.		unit is in position.		
		Does the error message still	Yes	Replace the K ID unit.		
D 0"		appear after rebooting?	Yes	Replace the K ID motor.		
Power Off/on	Tray2 24V	24 V of power is not supplied to		Check to confirm that tray 2 is		<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
924: Error	Abnormal Voltage	tray 2 properly.		mounted correctly.		
Bower Offen		24 V of power is not supplied to		Chook to confirm that tray 2 is		
Power Oil/on	Abnormal Voltage	tray 3 property		mounted correctly	<b>v</b>	ľ ľ
920. EII0I	Detection	liay 5 property.		mounted correctly.		
Power Off/on	Trav4 24V	24 V nower is not supplied to		Check to confirm that tray 4 is		
926 Error	Abnormal Voltage	tray 4 properly		mounted correctly	•	ľ
0_01_000	Detection					
Power Off/on	Tray5 24V	24 V of power is not supplied to		Check to confirm that tray 5 is	1	1
927: Error	Abnormal Voltage	tray 5 properly.		mounted correctly.		
	Detection					
Power Off/on	Fuser Motor Lock	The fuser is not operating		Check to confirm that the fuser	1	1
928: Error	Error	properly.		is in position.		
		Does the error still occur?	Yes	Replace the fuser.		
			Yes	Replace the fuser motor.		
Power Off/on	Waste Toner	The waste toner transfer motor is		Check to confirm that the waste	1	1
929: Error	Transfer Motor	not operating properly.		toner transfer system is operating		
	Lock Error	Does the error still occur?		properly.		
D 0"'			Yes	Replace the waste toner motor.		
Power Ott/on	SUD-CPU Clock	The Sub-CPU clock frequency is		Check the connection of the		<b>′</b>
930: Error	Frequency Error		V	SZIVI DOARD.		
Bower Offer		Dues the error still occur?	res	Replace the semestion of the		
		in not correct				<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
931: Error		Doos the error still ecour?	Vac	Poplace the V72.2 beard		
Power Off/on		The inverter CPU clock fro	165	Check the connection of the	-	
932 Error	Clock Frequency	quency is not correct		V72-3 board	ľ	
	Frror	Does the error still occur?	Yee	Replace the V72-3 board		
			103			

Table 7-1-1 Operator Alarm (9/10)

Display	Cause	Error Description and Analysis	judgment	Remedy	600	1200
Power Off/on	Trya2 CPU Clock	The tray-2 CPU clock frequency		Check the connection of the	1	1
933: Error	Frequency Error	is not correct.		V72-1 board of tray 2.		
		Does the error still occur?	Yes	Replace the V72-1 board.		
Power Off/on	Trya3 CPU Clock	The tray-3 CPU clock frequency		Check the connection of the	1	1
934: Error	Frequency Error	is not correct.		V72-1 board of tray 3.		
		Does the error still occur?	Yes	Replace the V72-1 board.		
Power Off/on	Trya4 CPU Clock	The tray-4 CPU clock frequency		Check the connection of the	1	1
935: Error	Frequency Error	is not correct.		V72-1 board of tray 4.		
		Does the error still occur?	Yes	Replace the V72-1 board.		
Power Off/on	Trya5 CPU Clock	The tray-5 CPU clock frequency		Check the connection of the	1	1
936: Error	Frequency Error	is not correct.		V72-1 board of tray 5.		
		Does the error still occur?	Yes	Replace the V72-1 board.		
Power Off/on	Waste Toner	The transfer mechanism of the		Check to confirm that the basket	1	1
940: Error	Transfer Error	toner duct for ID is not operating		assembly is in position (if it is		
		properly.		engaged with the gear of the		
		Does the error still occur?		printer).		
			Yes	Check to confirm that the holder		
				magnet D contains a magnet,		
				and check the magnetic polarity.		
			Yes	Replace the HAL IC circuit		
				board.		
			Yes	Replace the duct assembly toner.		
Software not	Keychip check	ASP PCB KeyChip unmounted or		Power OFF/ON	-	1
authorized	failed	KeyChip Error is detected.		Replace KeyChip		
001						
Software not	Unauthorized hard	The ASP PCB HDD is not a		Power OFF/ON	-	1
authorized	disk copy	standard (official) product.		Replace HDD		
002						
Software not	Unauthorized	The ASP PCB HDD program		Power OFF/ON	-	1
authorized	software configu-	does not match the destination.		Replace HDD		
003	ration					
Software not	EEPROM missing	The ASP PCB EEPROM		Power OFF/ON	-	1
authorized		unmounted or EEPROM Error is		Replace EEPROM		
004		detected.				

Table 7-1-1	Operator Alarm	(10/10)
-------------	----------------	---------

### 7.5.2 Preparing for Troubleshooting

(1) Operation Panel Display

The state of malfunction is displayed on the LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) of the operator panel of this machine.

Execute proper repairs according to the message indicated on the LCD.

Order	Malfunction Details	Flowchart No.
1	The machine does not operate properly after turning ON the power.	1
2	Jam Error Paper Supply Jam (1st Tray) Paper Supply Jam (Multipurpose Tray) Fee Jam Paper Output Jam Double-Side Print Jam	<ul> <li>2)-1</li> <li>2)-2</li> <li>2)-3</li> <li>2)-4</li> <li>2)-5</li> </ul>
3	Paper Size Error	3
4	I/D UP/DOWN Error	(4)
5	Fuser Unit Error	(5)
6	Fan Motor Error	6

Note Very When replacing the engine PCB (S2V PWB), remove the EEPROM chip from the old PCB and then put the EEPROM that was removed on the new PCB replacement.

- (2) CU Assy Troublesnhooting (600dpi Model)
  - a) Nothing is displayed on the LCD
    - CU PCB Malfunction

Has the power short-circuited on the CU PCB? (CP14+: 5v, CP16+: 3.3v)  $\rightarrow$  If NO GOOD, Check insertion of ROM/RAM DIMM

Others

Power, Operation Panel, Fuse, etc.

- b) "Communication Error" is displayed
  - CU PCB Malfunction

Does it operate when the RAM DIM and HDD are removed?

Is there any skewed insertion or half-insertion states?  $\rightarrow$  Re-insert the RAM DIM and HDD.

Replace CU PCB

- c) The display of "RAM Check" or "Initializing" remains displayed.
  - CU PCB Malfunction

Does it operate when the RAM DIM and HDD are removed?

Is there any skewed insertion or half-insertion states?  $\rightarrow$  Re-insert the RAM DIM and HDD.

Replace CU PCB

LAN Card PCB Malfunction

Replace the LAN card (HMK board), and check whether it operates properly. If not, replace the CU board or check the adjustment of the surface-mounted devices on the board.

d) Error Message Display

Following the processing procedures of the Error Message in the table attachment.

- (3) CU Assy Troubleshooting (1200dpi Model)
  - a) Nothing is displayed on the LCD
    - CU PCB Malfunction

Has the power short-circuited on the CU PCB? (C450+: 5v, C50+: 3.3v)  $\rightarrow$  If NO GOOD, check to see if the RAM DIMM is normally inserted.

Others

Power, Operation Panel, Fuse, etc.

- b) "Communication Error" is displayed
  - CU PCB Malfunction

Does the LED lightup normally? (PWR\_GOOD Green: Light ON, DIAG\_LED3-0 Red: Light OFF, FPGA\_LED Green: Light ON)  $\rightarrow$  If NO GOOD, remove in the sequential order of BYN PCB (optional), HMK PCB, RAM\_DIMM, and HDD. Does the Light On state vary?

If the LED Light On state is Normal, replace the applicable part.

If light ON is not normal, then replace PCB.

- c) "Initializing" remains displayed.
  - CU PCB Malfunction

Does the LED lightup normally? (PWR\_GOOD Green: Light ON, DIAG\_LED3-0Red: Light OFF, FPGA\_LED Green: Light ON)  $\rightarrow$  If NO GOOD, remove in the sequential order of BYN PCB (optional), HMK PCB, RAM\_DIMM, and HDD. Does the Light On state vary?

If the LED Light On state is Normal, replace the applicable part.

If light ON is not normal, then replace PCB.

d) Error Message Display

Following the processing procedures of the Error Message in the table attachment.

\*1 ASP PCB for 1200dpi Analysis Reference

When "Communications Error" appears on the display panel, this message is displayed with the PU. This indicates a problem has occurred in the ASP board during its initialization. In such a case, open the sheet metal of the CU board and check the lit LED on the ASP board to locate the problem.

The LED mounted on the ASP PCB come in the following types. The description of the cases when they do not light up normally are described below.

- PWR\_GOOD (Green): This indicates the power status of the ASP PCB. It lights up when the various power output sources (CPU core voltage, 2.5V, 3.3V, 5V0 of the ASP PCB are normal. If it does not light up, disassemble the BYN PCB (optional), HMK PCB, RAM\_DIMM and HDD. Check to see if it will lightup in this state.
- DIAG\_LED[3: 0] (Red): This indicates the initialization processing state of the ASP PCB. It will all lightup immediately after the power is turned ON. It will all dim down when the initialization process is successfully completed. If all lights do not dim, then there is a CU PCB malfunction. If all lights do not dim, then disassemble the BYN PCB (optional), HMK PCB, RAM\_DIMM and HDD. Check to see if it will lightup again in this state.

\* When the HDD is not correctly recognized or when the download switch is in the down position, DIAG\_LEDs 2 and 0 are on and DIAG\_LED 1 is out.

- HDD\_LED (Red): This lights up when accessing the HDD. If it does not start flashing even after the power is turned ON, replace the HDD and check to see if the problem is corrected. Check to see that the download switch is facing upward.
- CF\_LED (Red): This lights up when accessing the CompactFlash. The CompactFlash is used with only some domestic models. If it does not start flashing even after the power is turned ON, replace the CompactFlash and check to see if the problem is corrected. Check to see that the download switch is facing upward.
- FPGA\_LED (Green): This lights up when communication is enabled between the engine and panel interface. If it does not lightup, then disassemble the BYN PCB (optional), HMK PCB, RAM\_DIMM and HDD. Check to see if it will lightup again in this state.

ASP PCB Download Switch Location

Both switches are facing upward. S100

- ) Power is turned on and the printer doesn't work properly.
- Turn off power and on again.
- Does the backlight light up (for approx. one second)?

• NO	Is the A	C cable connected properly?
	NO	Connect the AC cable properly.
YES	Is the p	ower supply indicator LED of the Main PCB on?
	• NO	Does power go off when power is turned on again 2 minutes after power is turned off?
	YES	Is the fuse F503 of the Engine PCB blown?
		YES Replace the Engine PCB.
	NO	Are the Engine PCB FFC (inserting DRV0 and DRV1 connectors) and the power connector cable properly connected to the Motor Driver PCB and the power supply?
		NO Connect them properly or replace the FFC or the cable.
	YES	Replace the power supply.
YES	Is the D	DIMM of the Main PCB set properly?
	NO	Set the DIMM properly. If that does not solve the problem, replace the DIMM.
YES	Is the o	perator panel cable connected properly?
	NO	Connect the cable properly.
YES	ls +5V ( PWB)? Pin 5: +	output to the panel connector (OPEPANE) of the Engine PCB (S2V -5V, Pin 2: 0V
	• NO	Is +5V output to the DENGEN connector of the Engine PCB (S2V PWB)? Pins 1 & 3: +5V, Pins 2 & 4: 0V
		NO After checking the DENGEN connector, replace the Low- Tension Power Supply Unit.
	YES	Replace the Engine PCB.
¥ YES	Is the p	roblem solved after the Control Panel PCB (X7G PWB) is replaced?
	YES	End
	NO	Replace the Engine PCB.
↓ (a)		

(a)	
YES	Is the DIMM of the Main PCB set properly?
	NO Set the DIMM properly. If that does not solve the problem, replace the DIMM.
YES	Are the voltages below output to the PU IF connector of the Main PCB? Pins 9, 10, 17, 18, 25, 26, 33, 34, 41, 42, 61, 69, 77, 85, 93: +5V±5% Pins 1, 2, 5, 6, 13, 14, 21, 22, 29, 30, 37, 38, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 53, 57, 65, 73, 74, 81, 82, 89, 97, 99: 0V
	YES Replace the Main PCB.
NO	Is +5V output the DENGEN connector of the Engine PCB? Pins 1 & 3: +5V, Pins 2 & 4: 0V
	YES Replace the Engine PCB.
¥ NO	Replace the Low-Tension Power Supply Unit.

2-1 Paper Supply Jam (1st Tray)

•	Immediately	after	turning	ON	the	power,	does	the	paper	jam	occur?

	• YES	Is there a jam in the IN1 Sensor or 1st Hopping Sensor?
		YES Remove the paper jam.
	NO (/	A) Does the sensor lever Sensor (IN1 Sensor, 1st Hopping Sensor) operate normally?
		NO Replace the defective sensor lever.
	YES	Does the sensor (IN1 Sensor, 1st Hopping Sensor) operate normally? (Check the sensor output using the switch scan test in the self-diagnosis mode.)
		NO Check the signal cable connection, then replace the Sensor PCB (S2C PWB).
	YES	After checking the signal cable connection, replace the Motor Driver PCB (S2M PWB).
NO	Immed	diately after intaking the paper, does a paper jam occur?
	• YES	Did the paper reach the IN1 Sensor or 1st Hopping Sensor?
		Yes Go to (A).
	• NO	Replace the paper separation frame Assy of the Feed Roller or Paper Cassette.
NO	Is the	Main Feed Motor operating?
		YES Replace the Feed Roller or Retard Roller.
NO	Is the	main feed motor resistance the rated value of approx. 3.4 $\Omega$ ?
	NO	Replace the Main Feed Motor.
YES	ls 20V	or more output to the DC0 connector pin of the Motor Driver PCB (S2M PWB)?
	NO	Replace the low voltage power unit.
YES	After o PCB(	checking the gear engagement and cable connection, replace the Motor Driver (S2M PWB).

2-2 Paper Supply Jam (Multipurpose Tray)

 $\ensuremath{\bullet}$  Immediately after turning ON the power, does the paper jam occur?

	• YES	s there a jam in the IN1 Sensor or 1st Hopping Sensor?			
		YES Remove the paper jam.			
	NO (	A) Does the Sensor Lever (IN1 Sensor, Paper Hopping Sensor) operator nor- mally?			
		NO Replace the defective sensor lever.			
	YES	Does the Sensor (IN1 Sensor, Paper Hopping Sensor) operate normally? (Check the sensor output using the switch scan test in the self-diagnosis mode.)			
		NO Check the signal cable connection, then replace the Sensor PCB (S2S PWB).			
	YES	After checking the signal cable connection, replace the Motor Driver PCB (S2M PWB).			
NO	Immed	diately after intaking the paper, does a paper jam occur?			
	• YES	Did the paper reach the IN2 sensor?			
		YES Go to (A).			
	¥ NO	Replace the multipurpose tray Assy.			
	Is the	resist motor operating?			
	• NO	Is 20V or more output to the DC0 connector pin of the Motor Driver PCB (S2M PWB)?			
		NO Replace the low voltage power unit.			
	YES	Check the cable connection, then replace the Motor Driver PCB (S2M PWB).			
YES	Check	the cable connection, then replace the Motor Driver PCB (S2M PWB).			

# 2-3 Paper feed Jam

• Immediately after turning ON the power, does a paper feed jam occur?

	• YES	Does the paper jam occur at the IN 2 Sensor, WR Sensor or Exit Sensor?			
		YES Remove the jammed paper.			
	()				
	♦ NO	Does the lever of the IN 2 Sensor, WR Sensor or Exit Sensor work properly?			
		NO Replace the defective sensor lever.			
	¥ YES	Does the sensor (IN 2 Sensor, WR Sensor or Exit Sensor) work properly? (Check the sensor output using the switch scan test in the self-diagnosis mode.)			
		NO After checking the cable connection, replace the Sensor PCB (S2S PWB).			
	YES	Check the signal cable connection. (FSNS, DRV0 & DRV1 on the S2M PWB and DRV0, DRV1 & RSNS on the S2V PWB) Are they connected properly?			
		NO Properly connect cable.			
	YES	Replace the engine PCB.			
NO	Immed	Immediately after intaking the paper, does a paper feed jam occur?			
• YES Did the pa		Did the paper reach the WR sensor?			
		YES Go to (A).			
	▼ NO	Is the resist motor operating?			
		• NO Is the resist motor resistance the rated value at approx. 7.9 $\Omega$ ?			
		NO Replace the resist motor.			
		YES Check the gear bite, then replace the engine PCB.			
	YES	Replace resist roller A or B.			
NO	Does	paper feed jam occur when loading the paper?			
	• YES	Is the belt motor running?			
		• NO Is the resistance of the belt motor the rated level (4.7 $\Omega$ )?			
		NO Replace the Belt Motor.			
		YES After checking the gear engagement and cable connection, replace the Motor Driver PCB (S2M PWB).			
	YES	Is ID rotating?			
		NO After checking the gear engagement, replace the ID.			
	YES	After checking the gear engagement, replace the Belt Cassette Assy.			
¥ NO	END				

## 2-4 Paper Output Jam

• Immediately after turning ON the power, does a paper output jam occur?

	• YES	Is there a jam with the paper Exit sensor?		
		YES Remove the paper jam.		
		Does the paper Exit sensor lever operate normally?		
		NO Replace the paper Exit sensor lever.		
	¥ YES	Does the Delivery Sensor work properly? (Activate the Sensor Lever and check to see if the sensor works properly using the switch scan test in the self-diagnosis mode.)		
		NO Check signal cable connection, then replace the paper Exit sensor.		
	YES	Replace the engine PCB.		
NO Is the Left Upper Cover closed fully?		eft Upper Cover closed fully?		
	NO	Close the Left Upper Cover fully.		
YES	YES Is the heat motor operating?			
	• NO	Is the fuse of the heat motor blown?		
		NO Replace the heat motor.		
	YES	Check the cable connection, then replace the engine PCB.		
YES	Does the paper output guide Assy operate normally?			
	• YES	Is 20V or more output to the DC0 connector pin of the Motor Driver PCB (S2M PWB)?		
		NO Replace the motor driver PCB (S2M PWB).		
	YES	Replace the paper output guide Assy.		
YES	Replace the engine PCB.			

#### 2-5 Double-Side Print Jam

• Immediately after turning ON the power, does a paper feed jam occur?



③ Paper	Size Erre	or		
• Is standa	ard size p	paper used?		
	NO Use standard size paper.			
YES	Does the paper jam occur at the IN 1 Sensor?			
	YES	Remove the paper jam.		
NO	Does IN	Does IN1 Sensor Lever operate normally?		
	NO	Replace the defective sensor lever.		
YES	Does the (Activate switch s	e IN1 Sensor operate normally? The Sensor Lever and check to see if the sensor works properly using the can test in the self-diagnosis mode.)		
	NO	Check cable connection, then replace Sensor PCB (S2C PWB).		
YES	Does t	the IN2 Sensor Lever operate normally?		
	NO	Replace the defective sensor lever.		
YES	Does the (Activate switch s	e IN2 Sensor operate normally? The the Sensor Lever and check to see if the sensor works properly using the can test in the self-diagnosis mode.)		
	NO	Check cable connection, then replace Sensor PCB (S2S PWB).		
YES	Do all th (Press t mode.)	ne Paper Size Detection Switches work properly? he switches and check them using the switch scan test in the self-diagnosis		
	NO	Check the cable connection, then replace the Sensor Assy.		
YES	Does the	e guide of the cassette fit the paper size? (See Table 5-2.)		
	NO	Replace the cassette.		
YES	Check	the cable connection, then replace the motor driver PCB (S2M PWB)		

- ④ Image Drum Unit up/down movement error
- Check the ID up/down movement using the motor & clutch test in the self-diagnosis mode.
- Does the ID moves up and down?

	• YES	Check using the switch scan test in the self-diagnosis mode. Does the Up/ Down Sensor work properly?			
		YES	Replace the defective IDU Motor.		
	¥ NO	Is the Engine PCB (S2V PWB) connected properly to the ID Sensor PCB (SGG PWB)?			
		NO	Connect them properly.		
	YES	Make sure that the Up/Down Sensor is fastened securely and then replace the ID Sensor PCB. Is the error reset?			
		YES	End		
	¥ NO	Replace	e the Engine PCB.		
YES Is the C-ID I		-ID Moto	D Motor running properly?		
	• NO	Does the motor rotate in one direction only?			
		• YES	Is the problem solved by reconnecting the FFC to the Engine PCB and the Motor Driver PCB and the CID connectors?		
			YES End		
		NO	Is the problem solved by replacing the C-ID Motor?		
			YES End		
		¥ <sub>NO</sub>	Replace the Engine PCB.		
	NO	After ch tilted, re	ecking the gear engagement and ensuring that any connector is not place the C-ID Motor.		
YES	Check the engagement of the planet gear and replace the Planet Gear Unit (Planet-Assv-F and Plane-Assv-R).				

5 Fuser Unit Error

• Immediately after turning ON the power, does a fuser error occur?



Bottom of Fuser Unit

6 Motor Fan error

• Check the fan in question using the motor & clutch test in the self-diagnosis mode.

• Does the fan rotate?

	• NO	NO Are the cables connected properly? (All the cables between the Motor D PCB and the fan are included. If it is the Power Supply Fan, all the ca between the Engine PCB and the fan are included.)	
		NO Connec	t the cables properly.
	YES	Is foreign substa	nce or a cable caught?
		YES Remov	e the caught substance or cable.
NO		Is 20V or more o PCB?	utput to the Pin 3 of the DC0 connector on the Motor Driver
		NO Replac	e the Low-Tension Power Supply PCB.
	YES	Replace the fan. Does the fan rot	ate properly?
		YES End	
	NO	Replace the Mot Power Supply Fa	or Driver PCB (replace the Power Supply PCB if it is the an). Does the fan rotate properly?
		YES End	
	¥ NO	Replace the Eng	ine PCB.
YES	Are the the the fan a PCB an	ables connected   re included. If it i I the fan are incl	properly? (All the cables between the Motor Driver PCB and s the Power Supply Fan, all the cables between the Engine uded.)
	NO	Connect the cab	les properly.
YES	ls 20V o	or more output to the Pin 3 of the DC0 connector on the Motor Driver PCB?	
	NO	Replace the Low	-Tension Power Supply PCB.
YES	YES Replace the fan. Is the alarm not activated during regular operation after power is		during regular operation after power is turned on?
	YES	End	
NO	Replace Fan). [	the Motor Driver F oes the fan rotate	PCB (replace the Power Supply PCB if it is the Power Supply properly?
	YES	End	
NO	Replace	the Engine PCB.	

# 7.5.3 Troubleshooting With Abnormal Image

Troubleshooting with printout results that are irregular as shown in the diagrams below, are indicated.

Abnormal Image	Flow Chart No
The overall image is too light or uneven, or the color tone is off centered, on the overall, while printing the image. (Figure 7-2 $(A)$ )	1
The white area gets dirty. (Figure 7-2 $\textcircled{B}$ )	2
Blank sheet is output. (Figure 7-2 $\bigcirc$ )	3
A band or stripe print appears in the vertical direction of the printout. (Black Band, Color Band, Black Stripe, Color Stripe). (Figure 7-2 $\bigcirc$ )	4
A white band, white stripe, uneven color band or uneven color stripe occurs in the vertical direction.(Figure 7-2 $\widehat{(F)}$ )	(5)
Defective Fusion (the image smears or peels off when touched).	6
Periodicity Abnormality (Figure 7-2 (E))	7
Printout Falloff	8
Color Offset	9
Stripe in Horizontal Print Direction (Figure 7-2 (G))	10



(A) On the overall too light or uneven print



(E) Abnormal Periodicity





B White Area Gets Dirty



(F) White Band/White Strip in Vertical Direction

© Blank



G Stripe in Horizontal



D Black Band/ Black Stripe in Vertical

Direction

- (4) The screen in light on the overall. Or there is overall color drift in the printed image. (Figure 7-2 (A))
- Is there enough toner? (Is [Toner Short] displayed?)

	YES Replenish toner.			
	Is standard paper used?			
	NO Use standard paper.			
YES	Is the LED head lens dirty?			
	YES Clean the LED head lens.			
NO	Is the entire LED head Assy properly connected to the relay PCB (S2H PWB) and Engine PCB (S2V PWB)?			
	NO Check the cable connect (between each LED head and engine PCB), then properly connect the cable between the LED head and engine PCB.			
YES	Is the LED head pressing spring properly set?			
	NO Properly set the pressing spring.			
YES	Are the protrusions on both sides of the LED head properly in contact with each FG plate spring?			
	NO Correct the bend in the FG plate spring.			
YES	Replace the LED head. Has the problem been corrected?			
	YES END			
NO	Replace the engine PCB (S2V PWB). Has the problem been corrected?			
	YES END			
<b>V</b> NO	Replace the head shield cable. Has the problem been corrected?			
	YES END			
<b>V</b> NO	Check the cable connection, then replace the low voltage power unit. Has the problem been corrected?			
	YES END			
NO	Is +24V output to the HVOLT connector pin 16 of the engine PCB (S2V PWB)?			
	NO Replace the engine PCB.			
¥ YES	Check the cable connection, then replace the high voltage power unit or belt cassette Assy. Has operation been restored?			
	YES END			
NO	Is the I/D unit terminal properly connected to the contact Assy? (Refer to Figure 7-3)			
	NO Properly connect the I/D unit terminal to the contact Assy.			
YES	Replace Image Drum Unit.			
	When vertices the Engine DOD (COV DWD), remove the EEDDOM from the old DOD			
tł	then replacing the Engine PCB ( $S \ge v$ PVVB), remove the EEPROW from the old PCB, nen mount that EEPROM on the new PCB.			
2. lf	the EEPROM is not going to be replaced, refer to Section 5.2.2.			

(2) The white area gets dirty. (Figure 7-2 (B))

• Has the image drum been exposed to external light for a long time?

	YES Replace I/D Unit.
NO	Is the fuser unit roller dirty?
	YES Replace the fuser unit.
NO	Correct the [Paper Thickness] setting.
	NO Properly set the [Paper Thickness].
YES	Replace the LED head. Has the problem been corrected?
	YES END
NO	Replace the engine PCB (S2V PWB). Has the problem been corrected?
	YES END
NO	Replace the head shield cable. Has the problem been corrected?
	YES END
NO	Check the cable connection, then replace the low voltage power unit. Has the problem been corrected?
	YES END
NO	Is +24V output to the HVOLT connector Pin 16 of the Engine PCB (S2V PWB)?
	NO Replace the engine PCB.
YES	Check the cable connection, then replace the high voltage power unit or belt unit. Has operation been restored?
	YES END
NO	Is the I/D unit terminal properly connected to the contact Assy? (Refer to Figure 7-3)
	NO Properly connect the I/D unit terminal to the contact Assy.
YES	Replace Image Drum Unit.
Note / 1.	When replacing the Engine PCB (S2V PWB), remove the EEPROM from the old PCB, hen mount that EEPROM on the new PCB.
2.	t the EEPROM is not going to be replaced, refer to Section 5.2.2.

③ Blank Sheet (Figure 7-2 ①)

• Are all LED head Assy parts properly connected to the relay PCB (S2H PWB) and engine PCB (S2V PWB)?

	NO Check the cable connection of the LED head and cable connection between between the relay PCB and engine PCB, then properly connect the cable between the LED head and engine PCB.			
YES	Is the LED head pressing spring properly set?			
	NO Properly set the pressing spring.			
YES	Are the protrusions on both sides of the LED head properly in contact with each FG plate spring?			
	NO Correct the bend in the FG plate spring.			
YES	Replace the LED head. Has the problem been corrected?			
	YES END			
¥ NO	Replace the engine PCB (S2V PWB). Has the problem been corrected?			
	YES END			
₹ NO	Replace the head shield cable. Has the problem been corrected?			
	YES END			
NO	Check the cable connection, then replace the low voltage power unit. Has the problem been corrected?			
	YES END			
<b>T</b> NO	Is +20V or more output to the Pin 16 of the HVOLT connector on the Engine PCB (S2V PWB)?			
	NO Replace the engine PCB.			
YES	Check the cable connection, then replace the high voltage power unit or belt unit. Has operation been restored?			
	YES END			
<b>NO</b>	Is the I/D unit terminal properly connected to the contact Assy? (Refer to Figure 7-3)			
	NO Properly connect the I/D unit terminal to the contact Assy.			
YES	Replace Image Drum Unit.			
Note 1. V	When replacing the Engine PCB (S2V PWB), remove the EEPROM from the old PCB, then mount that EEPROM on the new PCB.			

2. If the EEPROM is not going to be replaced, refer to Section 5.2.2.

- ④ Band or stripe appears in vertical direction of the printed area. (Black Band, Color Band, Black Stripe, Color Stripe) (Figure 7-2 ①)
- Are all LED head Assy parts properly connected to the relay PCB (S2H PWB) and engine PCB (S2V PWB)?
  - NO Check the cable connection of the LED and the cable connection between the relay PCB and engine PCB, then properly connect the cable between the LED head and engine PCB.
- YES Replace the LED head. Has the problem been corrected?

YES END

NO Replace the head shield cable. Has the problem been corrected?

YES END

NO Check the cable connection. Then replace the engine PCB (S2V PWB). Has the problem been corrected?

YES END

NO Check the cable connection, then replace the , Engine PCB (S2V PWB). Has operation been restored?

YES END.

- NO Is the I/D unit terminal properly connected to the contact Assy? (Refer to Figure 7-3)
  - NO Properly connect the I/D unit terminal to the contact Assy.
- YES Replace Image Drum Unit.
- Note 
   1. When replacing the Engine PCB (S2V PWB), remove the EEPROM from the old PCB, then mount that EEPROM on the new PCB.
  - 2. If the EEPROM is not going to be replaced, refer to Section 5.2.2.

- 5 White Band, White Stripe, Uneven Color Band, Uneven Color Stripe Occurring in Vertical Direction (Figure 7-2 (F))
- Is the LED head lens dirty?
  - YES Clean the LED head lens.
- NO Are all LED head Assy parts properly connected to the relay PCB (S2H PWB) and engine PCB (S2V PWB)?
  - NO Check the cable connection of the LED and the cable connection between the relay PCB and engine PCB, then properly connect the cable between the LED head and engine PCB.
- YES Replace the LED head. Has the problem been corrected?

YES END

NO Replace the head shield cable. Has the problem been corrected?

YES END

NO Check the cable connection, then replace the engine PCB (S2V PWB). Has the problem been corrected?

YES END

YES Check the cable connection, then replace the Engine PCB (S2V PWB). Has operation been restored?

YES END.

- NO Is the I/D unit terminal properly connected to the contact Assy? (Refer to Figure 7-3)
  - NO Properly connect the ID unit terminal to the contact Assy.
- YES Replace Image Drum Unit.
- Note 
   1. When replacing the Engine PCB (S2V PWB), remove the EEPROM from the old PCB, then mount that EEPROM on the new PCB.
  - 2. If the EEPROM is not going to be replaced, refer to Section 5.2.2.

6 Poor Fusion (lightly touching the toner causes the toner to wipe off or fall off)

• Is standard paper used?

	NO Use standard paper.
YES	Fuser Unit contact properly connected?
	NO Properly connect the fuser unit contact.
YES	Is the fuser unit roller dirty?
	YES Replace the fuser unit.
NO	Is the [Paper Thickness] (Menu 1) properly set?
	NO Properly set the [Paper Thickness].
YES	Is there an AC voltage output between CN connector Pin 1 and 3 of the low voltage power unit?
	NO Replace the low voltage power unit.
YES	Are the three Upper Roller Thermistors down or short-circuited? (See Figure 7-1.) At an ambient temperature between 0 and 43°C: 7-pole side: Pins 1 & 2 = 4194 to 696.6k $\Omega$ Pins 3 & 4 = 642.1 to 122.4k $\Omega$ Pins 5 & 6 = 642.1 to 122.4k $\Omega$
	NO Replace the fuser unit.
YES	Is the thermistor on the lower side down or short-circuited? (See Figure 7-1.) At an ambient temperature between 0 and 43°C: 6-pole side: Pins 1 & 2 = 642.1 to $122.4k\Omega$
	NO Replace the fuser unit.
YES	Does the fuser temperature match the set temperature? Check the fuser temperature on the LCD of the engine Maintenance Mode display.
	NO Replace the fuser unit.
YES	Replace the fuser unit.
Note 1. V	When replacing the Engine PCB (S2V PWB), remove the EEPROM from the old PCB, hen mount that EEPROM on the new PCB.

2. If the EEPROM is not going to be replaced, refer to Section 5.2.2.

- Periodicity **Malfunction Details Restoration Method** 94 mm Image Drum Replace the image drum cartridge. 49.6 mm **Development Roller** Replace the image drum cartridge. 54.8 mm Sponge Roller Replace the image drum cartridge. 37.7 mm **Charge Roller** Replace the image drum cartridge. 89 mm Upper Roller Replace the fuser unit. 125 mm Lower Rolle Replace the fuser unit.
- ⑦ Periodicity Abnormal (Refer to Figure 7-2 (E))

Note After replacing the Image Drum Cartridge, Fuser Unit or Belt Unit, reset the counter from the User Maintenance Mode.

	then mount that EEPROM on the new PCB.
2.	If the EEPROM is not going to be replaced, refer to Section 5.2.2.

(8) Printing Thinned Out

• Is the LE	D head lens dirty?		
	YES Clean the LED head lens.		
NO	Are all LED head Assy parts properly connected to the relay PCB (S2H PWB) and engine PCB (S2V PWB)?		
	NO Check the cable connection of the LED and the cable connection between the relay PCB and engine PCB, then properly connect the cable between the LED head and engine PCB.		
YES	Is the LED head pressing spring properly set?		
	NO Properly set the pressing spring.		
YES	Are the protrusions on both sides of the LED head properly in contact with each FG plate spring?		
	NO Correct the bend in the FG plate spring.		
YES	Replace the LED head. Has the problem been corrected?		
	YES END		
NO	Replace the head shield cable. Has the problem been corrected?		
	YES END		
¥ NO	Check the cable connection, then replace the engine PCB (S2V PWB). Has the problem been corrected?		
	YES END		
¥ NO	Check the cable connection. Then replace the low voltage power unit. Has the problem been corrected?		
	YES END		
YES	Is +24V output to the HVOLT connector Pin 16 of the Engine PCB (S2V PWB)?		
	NO Replace the engine PCB.		
YES	Check the cable connection, then replace the high voltage power unit or belt unit. Has operation been restored?		
	YES END		
	Is the I/D unit terminal properly connected to the contact Assy? (Refer to Figure 7-3)		
	NO Properly connect the I/D unit terminal to the contact Assy.		
YES	Replace Image Drum Unit.		
Note 🖊 1. V	Vhen replacing the Engine PCB (S2V PWB), remove the EEPROM from the old PCB.		

③ Color E	Drift			
• "Toner Low" is displayed.				
	YES Replenish toner. Has operation been restored?			
	YES END			
<b>Y</b> NO	Conduct a color drift test in the engine Maintenance Mode. Method: Enter the Engine Maintenance Mode, and self-diagnostic mode (Level 1).			
	DIAGNOSTIC MODE			
	XX.XX.XX			
Press [MENU+] key 4 times to display the [REG ADJUST TEST].				
	REG ADJUST TEST			
Press [ENTER] key once to display the [REG ADJUST EXECUTE].				
	REG ADJUST EXECUTE			
Press [ENTER] key to execute automatic correction of color drift (motor starts erating, and color drift correction is executed).				
Color drive correction operation does not take effect (motor does not operation), and immediately displays "OK".				
	YES Error other than color drift occurred. Correct error. Has color drift been corrected and restored for proper color?			
	YES END			
(A)				

(A)				
• NO	[NG CALIBRATION LEFT/RIGHT] display			
	• YES	Is the color drift sensor cover dirty?		
		YES	Cleaning defect of the surface of the sensor cover by the cleaning blade on the rear of the shutter. Replace the shutter and sensor cover then restore the cleaning performance.	
	¥ NO	Check the S2Z PCB (Color Drift Sensor PCB) connector, S2V PCB (engine PCB) CSNS, power connector and the connector connected with Sensor-Right Assy connection. Has operation been restored after checking connection?		
		YES	END	
	NO	Replace the S2Z PCB. Has operation been restored?		
		YES	END	
	NO	Replace	the engine PCB. Has operation been restored?	
		YES	END	
	♥ NO	Replace the S2Z PCB, and Engine PCB connection cable. Has operation been restored?		
		YES	END	
NO	[DYNAMICRANGE LEFT/RIGHT] display			
	• YES	Is the color drift sensor cover dirty?		
		YES	Cleaning defect of the surface of the sensor cover by the cleaning blade on the rear of the shutter. Replace the shutter and sensor cover then restore the cleaning performance.	
		Is the shutter open/close operation abnormal?		
		• YES	Replace the shutter. Has operation been restored?	
			YES END	
		♥ NO	Replace the shutter open/close solenoid. Has operation been re- stored?	
			YES END	
	NO	Replace	the belt unit. Has operation been restored?	
		YES	END	
	<b>↓</b> NO	Replace	the ID unit. Has operation been restored?	
		YES	END	
(B)				

(B)

• [Yellow, Magenta, Cyan Left/Right/Horizontal] display

• YES	e the belt unit. Has operation been restored?			
	YES	END		
NO	Replace the ID unit. Has operation been restored?			
	YES	END		
NO	Is the gear abnormal? (I/D, Multipurpose Tray, Belt Unit, Belt Motor, etc Assy)			
	YES	Replace the damaged gear Assy.		
NO	LED head Unit PCB (S2H PWB) connection properly connected?			
	NO	LED head Unit PCB connection Connect properly.		
YES Check the cable connection, then replace the LED head Arbitrary been restored?		he cable connection, then replace the LED head Assy. Has operation estored?		
	YES	END		
NO	Check the cable connection, Replace the PCB (S2H PWB) connection. Has operation been restored?			
	YES	END		
NO	Is the Engine PCB (S2V PWB) properly connected to the PCB (S2H PWB)?			
	NO	Properly connect the engine PCB to the PCB connection.		
NO	Replace the engine PCB. Has operation been restored?			
	YES	END		
NO	Is the I/D unit terminal properly connected to the contact Assy? (Refer to Figure 7-3)			
	NO	Properly connect the I/D unit terminal to the contact Assy.		
YES	Replace	e Image Drum Unit.		

- Note 
   1. When replacing the Engine PCB (S2V PWB), remove the EEPROM from the old PCB, then mount that EEPROM on the new PCB.
  - 2. If the EEPROM is not going to be replaced, refer to Section 5.2.2.

10 Stripe in Horizontal Print Direction (Figure 7-2 G)

• Are all LED head Assy parts properly connected to the relay PCB (S2H PWB) and engine PCB (S2V PWB)?

	NO	Check the cable connection of the LED and the cable connection between the relay PCB and engine PCB, then properly connect the cable between the LED head and engine PCB.			
YES	Is the	Is the LED head pressing spring properly set?			
	NO	Properly set the pressing spring.			
YES	Are the FG pla	Are the protrusions on both sides of the LED head properly in contact with each FG plate spring?			
	NO	Correct the bend in the FG plate spring.			
¥ YES	Replac Has th	Replace the LED head. Has the problem been corrected?			
	YES	END			
¥ NO	Replac Has th	Replace the head shield cable. Has the problem been corrected?			
	YES	END			
¥ NO	Check Has th	Check the cable connection, then replace the engine PCB (S2V PWB). Has the problem been corrected?			
	YES	END			
YES	Remou Has th	Remount or replace the belt unit. Has the problem been corrected?			
	YES	END			
NO	Is the	I/D unit terminal properly connected to the contact Assy? (See Figure 7-3)			
	NO	Properly connect the I/D unit terminal to the contact Assy.			
YES	ES Replace the image drum unit. Has the problem been corrected?				
	YES	END			
¥ NO	Return	to factory (investigate source of noise in the machine).			

- (1) Paper Thickness Error (Err Code 323, 324)
- Is the Paper Thickness Sensor Connector disconnected?
- Is the PATHICK connector on the Sensor Relay PCB (S2S PWB) connected securely?
  - NO Connect the connector properly.
- YES YES Is any sensor cable down?

5V:

YES Replace the cable.

YES

Is 5V output to the Sensor Relay PCB (S2S PWB)? PATHICK Pin 3 0V: PATHICK Pin 1 FSNS Pin 1 FSNS Pin 9

_	-	_	
Outpu	t of 5V		A
PATHICK	FSNS	Judgement	Action
ОК	ОК	Normal	YES
NG	NG	Abnormal	NO-(1)
NG	ОК	Abnormal	NO-(2)

- NO-(1): Replace the Motor Driver PCB (S2M PWB). NO-(2) : Replace the Sensor Relay PCB (S2S PWB).
- YES Is a pulse wave between 250 and 350 kHz output to the Pin 2 of the PATHICK connector on the Sensor Relay PCB (S2S PWB)? (When the Belt Motor is not running.) (As an oscilloscope is used, this cannot be checked on site.)
  - NO Replace the Paper Thickness Sensor.
- YES Is the error reset after power is turned on and medium detection is performed?
  - NO Replace the Paper Thickness Sensor.

YES End



Figure 7-3

# 7.6 Check Fuse

The fuse system of the engine control part is composed as shown in the figure below.



# 7.7 Wireless LAN Trouble Shooting

### 7.7.1 Initial Investigation

When a trouble occurs when accessing C9800/C9600 (accessing by Print, Web or utilities) via wireless LAN, please perform the following initial investigation.

### 7.7.1.1 Confirming the trouble condition

Network problems similar to those of the wired LAN may be causing the trouble in the wireless LAN, in addition to those originating from the wireless connection.

You can't find a cause of the problem if all the information reported is "no communication", and you need to get detailed information on the conditions under which the problem occurred and the environment where the device was installed.

Category	Items to confirm	Contents	
Communica- tion state	Communication status	Cannot communicate at all; Can communicate but slow or intermittent; Cannot communicate occasionally.	
	When did the trouble occur?	Occurred from the very beginning after the device was installed; No problem at first, but it occurred after a while.	
	Authentication and encryption settings	Does Authentication method or Encryption method make a difference to the occurrence of the phenomenon?	
Devices where the	Only one specific PC cannot communicate? Or other PCs have the same problem?	Check if the similar phenomenon has occurred in other PCs, too.	
problem occurs	Kinds of applications and utilities that cannot communicate. Does it occur only with specific application? Or does it occur in other applications, too?	Is there any difference in the symptoms arising from applications/utilities such as the printer can print with the standard LPR but not with the OkiLPR, with the same PC?	
	Kind of protocols that cannot communicate. Does the phenomenon occur only with a specific protocol or with multiple protocols?	Is there any difference in the symptoms arising from the protocol such as the printer can print with LPR, but cannot perform Web Browse with HTTP? When TCP/IP is used, is communication with ping possible? (How many responses were returned after ping was executed 10 times?)	
	Only one specific access point cannot communicate? Or has the phenomenon occurred in one specific model or multiple units?	Has the same phenomenon occurred in other APs, too? Has the problem not occurred in the communication with the wireless PC that has connected to that access point?	
NIC status	Does this phenomenon occur only in certain devices (printer/NIC)?	Has this occurred only in a specific unit?	
	Wireless NIC's LED light state	When green and orange light up alternately, it means that there is no wireless connection. Blinking orange or orange that is ON all the time means the insufficient signal level.	
	Obtained IP address	When the IP address has been obtained, check if the correct IP address has been obtained, from the Network Information print. When the IP address is "169.254.xx.xx", the problem could be a DHCP server problem, but wireless link failure is a possibility.	
	Wireless status of Network Summary	Check the link status and Authentication status of Wireless Status column. (Refer to Fig. 7-1.)	

Table 7-3 List of items to check the conditions under which the problem occurred
Category	Items to confirm	Contents
Server Log	Access point's connected clients information	Some access points have a function that can display the list of connected wireless terminal devices. If the list includes the wireless NIC, it is more likely that the wireless link with the access point has succeeded.
	RADIUS server log	For Authentication with EAP, check the log information of the RADIUS server.
	DHCP server log	When IP address has been obtained with DHCP, check the DHCP server's address assignment information.

Wirplace Statue	< Infrastructure : Job / E4Ming	- dofouli	
Wireless Glatus	< minastructure : Tch / 54Mops	> default	
	Authentication Status	OK( Open )	
	Link Quality / Signal Strength	76% / 76%	

# Fig. 7-4(Ref) Network Summary wireless status description example

## 7.7.1.2Collecting Setting and Environment Information

Table 7-4 List of setting/environment information check ite
---

Category	Items to confirm	Contents
NIC settings	Wireless Settings Network Type, Communication Mode, SSID, Authentication	Can be confirmed from the ope pane or Network Informa- tion print.
	Authentication and encryption related settings (WEP Key, Pre-Shared Key, EAP certifi- cates, etc.)	These setting values cannot be confirmed from the Network Information print or the ope panel, so ask the user how he has set them over the phone. (Due to the security concerns, Keys are not displayed. Certificates can be confirmed by utility/Web if the wireless connection has been made.)
	Network settings (IP Address / Subnet Mask / Default Gateway)	Can be confirmed from the ope pane or Network Informa- tion print.
Wireless network	SSID/channel	SSID and channel used. Examine the peripheral access points and ad hoc wireless terminal devices as well.
information	Peripheral access point installation state	Access points installed in periphery, other than APs used. Need to pay attention to the existence of hidden access points that the administrator does not know and access points of adjoining floors and buildings, as well.
	Wireless Settings (Ad hoc/Infrastructure, SSID, Channel, wireless standard (1lb/g/a), Authentication/ Encryption settings)	User's wireless environment setting information
Access point settings	Access point model/FW version	Check if the access point's FW version is the latest one. Confirm in the vendor's Web page, etc.
	MAC Address Filtering and other security settings	Items that can be set and the function vary with the product.
	High Speed Mode (Super A/G etc) setting	Depending on the access point model, the High Speed Mode (Frame bursting) may be set to Enable in the default.
	Network settings	Access point LAN side network settings
Network settings	Protocol the user uses to communicate with the wireless NIC.	LPR / Port9100 / HTTP / SNMP / etc.
	Subnet address/gateway address	Including routers and switches that exist in the route of the printer, AP and client PC.
	DHCP server settings	When it is set to get the IP address from the DHCP server, check the DHCP server settings.

## 7.7.2 Symptoms and How to Handle Them

# Only certain computers cannot communicate/Some computers can communicate while others cannot

## Phenomenon:

Though connected to the same wireless network, some computers can communicate while others cannot.

Possible cause	What to do
In Ad hock mode, wireless computer's wireless network setting is incorrect.	Check the differences between the wireless settings (SSID, Authentication/ Encryption settings and Channel) and the network settings (IP address, Subnet mask and Default gateway) of the wireless computer that cannot communicate and the settings of the wireless computer that can communi- cate, and set the wireless computer that cannot communicate correctly.
In Infrastructure mode, computer's wired network settings are incorrect.	Check the differences in the network settings (IP address, Subnet mask and Default gateway) of the computer that cannot communicate and the settings of the computer that can communicate, and set the computer that cannot communicate correctly.
Infrastructure mode, there's a problem in the LAN cable and/or hub connected to the computer.	Check if the LAN cable and hub connected to the computer that cannot communicate are working correctly.
C9600's 'IP Filtering' setting is incorrect.	In the 'IP Filtering' of the C9600 wireless LAN card, set so as to allow the computer that cannot communicate to connect. You must set 'IP Filtering' of the wired LAN interface and 'IP Filtering' of the wireless LAN card separately.

Cannot communicate only with certain applications/utilities/Cannot communicate only with certain protocols.

## Phenomenon:

Of applications/utilities that run on the same computer, some cannot communicate with C9600 while others can.

Possible cause	What to do
Application/utility settings are incorrect.	Recheck the send destination settings of the applications/utilities and the network related settings, and set them correctly.
Protocols such as IPX/SPX, Ether Talk and NetBEUI other than TCP/IP are used.	Change the application/utility setting to use the TCP/IP. (The C9600 wireless LAN card supports only the TCP/IP.)
C9600's 'Security' setting is incorrect.	Set the service to be used in the applications/utilities ENABLE in 'Secu- rity' setting of the C9600 wireless LAN card. * You must set 'Security' of the wired LAN interface and 'Security' of the wireless LAN card separately.

# Only certain printers cannot communicate.

## Phenomenon:

Of the multiple C9600 units connected to the same wireless network, some C9600 can communicate while others can not.

Possible cause	What to do
Wireless LAN settings/network settings of the printers that cannot communicate are incorrect.	Compare the wireless LAN settings/network settings of the printer that can communicate and the printer that cannot, and set them correctly in the printer that cannot communicate.
Bad electric wave condition/electric wave hard to reach due to obstacles	Change the installation position/direction of the printer that cannot communicate, and try again.
	Change the access point installation position/direction, and try again.
	Check the peripheral electric wave sources (cordless phone, microwave oven, Bluetooth device, etc) and turn off the devices that are not in use.
The maximum connectable number has	Change the C9600 setting to connect to a different access point.
been exceeded due to many wireless terminals (Note PC, etc) that are simultaneously connected.	Turn off the wireless terminals (Note PC, etc) not in use. * Even if it is in standby state, the wireless terminal is connected to the access point.
Network FW has been lost.	Print the Network Summary (both wired and wireless), and check Firmware Version, Wireless F/W Version and Wireless ID Version. If any of them is not indicated correctly, download the network F/W again.
Printer's hardware problem (e.g. Damaged flash)	Check if the printer works via the wired LAN interface. If it does not, replace the printer.
Wireless LAN card hardware problem (e.g. Damaged flash)	Replace the wireless LAN card.

Cannot communicate only when going through certain access points/Cannot communicate occasionally/Communication is disrupted occasionally/Communication speed is extremely slow

Phenomenon:

Despite the same wireless LAN setting, wireless communication becomes erratic only when going through certain access point(s). Wireless communication is fine when going through other access points. (C9600 can be discovered by AdminManager when going through other access points.)

Possible cause	What to do
LAN cable connection at access point is inappropriate.	Check if the LAN cable at the access point is connected correctly. Check the type of cable (straight/cross), connectors, etc. Pay special attention to the connection if the LAN port at the access point has distinctions such as 'WAN' side, 'LAN' side, etc.
	Replace the LAN cable connected to the access point and the hub of the connection destination, by a different LAN cable and a different hub.
Network setting of the access point is inappropriate.	Check if the router function is set properly to match the network that is connected if the access point has the router function.
MAC Address Filtering function of the access point is running.	<ul> <li>When the MAC Address Filtering function of the access point is set to ENABLE, add the C9600 to the connection permitted list.</li> <li>* Register the MAC address of the C9600's wireless LAN card to the access point. Pay extra attention not to register the MAC address of the wired I/F by mistake.</li> <li>* MAC address of the wireless LAN card will be described in the Network Summary. For how to print Network Summary, see Printing Information / Network Summary (p.65).</li> </ul>
Access point has been set to "High Speed Mode (Frame bursting)".	If the access point is set to High Speed Mode such as 'Frame bursting', it may cause a communication problem with C9600. Set the High Speed Mode (Frame bursting) of the access point to OFF.
Access point malfunctions	Perform wireless communication via the access point used from the wireless computer and check if normal communication takes place. If the phenomenon occurs in a device other than C9600, it is more likely that the problem lies in the access point itself.
Access point problems/characteristics unique to particular product	Look for a similar phenomenon in the technical support information of the vendor's home page, etc., and implement the solution offered there.
	Upgrade the F/W of the access point to the latest version.
	Replace the access point by a different model.
The maximum connectable number has	Change the C9600 setting to connect to a different access point.
been exceeded due to many wireless terminals (Note PC, etc) that are simultane- ously connected.	<ul> <li>Turn off the wireless terminals (Note PC, etc) not in use.</li> <li>* Even if it is in standby state, the wireless terminal is connected to the access point.</li> </ul>

# In Ad hoc Mode, cannot communicate only with certain wireless computers /Cannot communicate sometimes/Communication is disrupted occasionally.

Phenomenon:

Despite the same wireless LAN setting, Ad hock Mode wireless communication becomes erratic with certain wireless computer(s).

No problem with the wireless communication with C9600 in other wireless computers. (C9600 can be discovered by AdminManager from other wireless computers.)

Possible cause	What to do
Network setting of the wireless computer is inappropriate.	Even in Ad hoc Mode connection, network setting such as IP address is required. Set the network items of the wireless interface of the wireless computer correctly.
Wireless function of the wireless computer is OFF.	Set the wireless interface of the wireless computer to ON.
Wired LAN interface of the wireless computer is used.	If both the wired LAN interface and the wireless interface are set to ON, sometimes applications/utilities may use the wired LAN interface. Set the wireless computer's wired LAN interface to OFF.
Wireless computer has been set to "High Speed Mode (Frame bursting)".	If the wireless computer is set to High Speed Mode such as 'Frame bursting', it may cause a communication problem with C9600. Set the High Speed Mode (Frame bursting) of the wireless computer to OFF.
Wireless computer malfunction.	Perform Ad hoc Mode wireless communication with a different wireless computer, and check if correct communication takes place. If the phenomenon occurs in wireless communication with a device other than C9600, it is more likely that the problem lies in the wireless computer itself.
Problems/characteristics unique to this wireless computer product or the wireless card product installed in that computer	Look for a similar phenomenon in the technical support information in the wireless computer or the wireless card vendor's home page, etc., and implement the solution offered there.
	Upgrade the device driver and the wireless client software of the wireless computer to the latest version.
	Wireless communication with the C9600 may become unstable due to the compatibility problem between C9600 and the wireless computer though it occurs very rarely. Replace the wireless computer by a different product.
The same channel is used.	Set the SSID and a channel that are not used by others for the wireless computer and C9600. * Set the channel leaving a space for as much as 5-channel from a channel used for other. If a channel next to the one in use is set, it may result in an erratic connection due to the electric wave interference.
Network setting of the wireless computer is inappropriate.	Even in Ad hoc Mode connection, network setting such as IP address is required. Set the network items of the wireless interface of the wireless computer correctly.

# Cannot make wireless connection/Communication is disrupted occasionally/ Communication speed is extremely slow

Phenomenon:

Cannot make wireless connection at all. - Cannot discover C9600 by AdminManager . Can communicate sometimes and other times cannot. Communication speed is extremely slow.

Possible cause	What to do
Power to the access point/wireless compu- ter is off.	Check if the power to the access point/wireless computer is ON.
Access point/wireless computer are not sending out electric waves.	Check the access point/wireless computer's settings and set "Wireless function" to "Enable". * In the 802.11a/b/g combo type access point/wireless computer, sometimes Wireless function is set to '11a only'.
	Check if the wireless computer's device driver has been installed correctly and is working correctly. (Confirm that Ad hoc mode wireless communication takes place with a different wireless computer.)
Access point/wireless computer settings do not match the C9600.	Try the connection in Open mode. Refer to "Cannot connect in Open mode" and set the items correctly in the C9600 After you confirm the connection in Open mode, change the settings to match the wireless LAN environment you are using such as WPA-PSK.
Bad electric wave condition/electric wave hard to reach due to obstacles)	Change the installation position/direction of the printer in which the phenomenon occurs, and try again.
	Change the installation position/direction of the access point/wireless computer, and try again.
	Check the electric wave sources in the surrounding (cordless phone, microwave oven, Bluetooth device, etc) and turn off the devices that are not in use.
There are multiple access points with the same SSID. (Excluding a case with roaming)	Check the setting of the access point(s) that has been installed nearby. Need to pay attention to the existence of hidden access points that the administrator does not know and access points of adjoining floors and buildings, as well. Change the settings of the C9600 and the access point to use a different SSID.
The same channel is used.	In case of Infrastructure Mode, change the channel setting of the access point. In case of Ad hoc Mode, change the channel setting of both the wireless computer and C9600. * Set the channel leaving a space for as much as 5-channel from one used for other. If a channel next to the one in use is set, it may result in an erratic connection due to the electric wave interference.
Access point malfunction	Refer to 'Wireless communication goes erratic only when going through certain access point(s)' and find out if the malfunctioning access point is causing this problem.
Wireless computer malfunction in Ad hoc Mode connection	Refer to 'In Ad hoc Mode, cannot communicate only with certain wireless computers' and find out if the malfunctioning wireless computer is causing this problem.

# Failed to obtain IP address with DHCP setting/IP address that was not intended was obtained

Phenomenon:

With C9600 running with the DHCP enabled, an attempt to obtain IP address failed. Or the printer runs with an IP address that is different from the IP address that has been assigned by the DHCP server.

Possible cause	What to do
DHCP server's IP address pool has run of addresses, and cannot assign an IP address.	Check the DHCP server's IP address assignment state and set the DHCP server's IP address pool appropriately.
	Change the IP address setting of the C9600 to manual setting, and set an appropriate IP address.
IP address is assigned by the DHCP server function of the access point.	Check the access point's setting and set the DHCP server function properly.
Cannot communicate with DHCP server.	Check the network route of the access point and DHCP server, and connect so that C9600 can communicate with DHCP server via access point.

In case of Ad hoc Mode, normally DHCP does not assign IP addresses. To use in Ad hoc Mode, set a fixed IP address manually in the C9600 and the wireless computer.

## Failed to connect in Open Mode.

## Phenomenon:

Cannot make wireless connection in Open Mode though there is no electric wave problem.

Possible cause	What to do
C9600's SSID setting is incorrect.	Check the settings of the access point/wireless computer and set the correct SSID in the C9600. Note that SSID is case sensitive.
The settings of the access point/wireless computer are incorrect.	Check the settings of the access point/wireless computer and set them correctly. An example of the setting items you should check: • SSID • Authentication Method (should be set to Open Mode) • Encryption Method ( setting should be 'No encryption')
Wireless standard of the access point/ wireless computer does not match the	Confirm that the access point/wireless computer are compliant with IEEE802.11b or 802.11g. C9600 is compliant only with IEEE802.11b/g.
C9600.	Make sure that the access point/wireless computer's IEEE802.11b or 802.11g function has been set to Enable.
	Change the setting so that the wireless standard of the access point/ wireless computer and the wireless standard that the C9600 uses match. For example, if the C9600's [Communication Mode] has been set to [802.11b] and the access point/wireless computer have been set to [802.11g Only], they cannot be connected.
C9600's network setting is incorrect.	Set the correct IP address, the subnet mask and the default gateway in the C9600. * Please note that the network setting of the wired LAN interface and the network setting of the wireless LAN card of the C9600 must be set separately.

## Failed to connect in Shared Key Mode.

## Phenomenon:

Wireless communication has no problem in the Open Mode, but connection fails when the Shared Key Mode is set.

Possible cause	What to do
The settings of the access point/wireless computer are incorrect.	<ul> <li>Check the settings of the access point/wireless computer and set them correctly.</li> <li>An example of the setting items you should check: <ul> <li>Authentication setting (should be set to Shared Key or Open Mode)</li> <li>Encryption method (should be set to WEP 64(40)bits or WEP128(104) bits)</li> <li>WEP key, key size, key input method and key index</li> </ul> </li> <li>* Some access points have the function that automatically generates WEP key from the string that has been input. C9600 does not support this function.</li> <li>* If you cannot connect to the C9600 when the Authentication has been set to 'Open' and the Encryption method to 'WEP' in the access point/wireless computer, set Authentication to 'Shard Key' + Encryption method 'WEP' in the access point/wireless computer.</li> </ul>
C9600's WEP setting is incorrect.	Check the WEP key and the key index, and set the correct ones in the C9600. If you select 'ASCII' as the key input method, be careful since it is case-sensitive.

## Failed to connect in WPA-PSK Mode.

## Phenomenon:

Wireless communication has no problem in the Open Mode and Shared Key Mode, but connection fails when the WPA-PSK Mode is set.

Possible cause	What to do
The settings of the access point are incorrect.	Check the settings of the access point and set them correctly. An example of the setting items you should check: WPA-PSK setting (Pre-Shared Key setting value) Encryption Method ( should be set to TKIP)
Pre-Shared Key setting of the C9600 is incorrect.	Check Pre-Shared Key and set it correctly in the C9600. Please note that Pre-Shared Key is case-sensitive.
The Encryption method does not match in the C9600 and the access point.	Set the Encryption method of the access point to 'TKIP'.

## Communication is disrupted occasionally

## Phenomenon:

Wireless communication takes place in WPA-PSK Mode, but it is occasionally disrupted. Communication is never disrupted in Open Mode.

Possible cause	What to do
Communication is disrupted by the update process of the Encryption key. In WPA-PSK Mode, the security is in- creased by routinely updating the Encryption key.	Make the setting for the update interval of the Encryption key of the access point longer. Even with this change, a possibility remains for this phenomenon to occur unless you disable the updating of the encryption key. If you disable the updating of the encryption key, it may compromise the security.

# Error occurs with Client Certificate Import.

## Phenomenon:

When Import Client Certificate is executed for EAP authentication, an error occurs, and Import fails.

Possible cause	What to do
The file format of the client certificate is incorrect.	Ask the certificate distributor to provide the client certificate file again in the PKCS#12 format.
Client certificate does not contain the private key.	Ask the certificate distributor to provide the client certificate in the file form that contains the private key.
An unsupported hash algorithm is used in the certificate.	Ask the Certification Authority to reissue the certificate using the MD5 or SHA1 hash algorithm.
'Client authentication' has not been set in the 'Extended key Usage' attribute of the certificate.	Ask the Certification Authority to reissue the certificate in which 'Client authentication' has been set. (Normally, 'Client authentication' has been set in the certificate issued for EAP authentication of the wireless LAN.)
An unsupported key size is used in the certificate.	Ask the Certification Authority to reissue the certificate generated with any of the key sizes 512/1024/2048/4096bits.
The certificate file size is too large.	Normal certificate files never result in an Import error due to excess size. There's a possibility that the certificate file may be incorrect or multiple certificates may be contained, such as certificate chain. Ask the Certifica- tion Authority to issue the correct certificate.

# Error occurs with CA Certificate Import.

## Phenomenon:

When Import CA Certificate is executed for EAP authentication, an error occurs, and Import fails.

Possible cause	What to do
The file format of the CA certificate is incorrect.	Ask the certification distributor to provide the CA certificate file in DER or PEM format again.
An unsupported key size is used in the certificate.	Ask the Certification Authority to reissue the certificate generated with any of the key sizes 512/1024/2048/4096bits.
An unsupported hash algorithm is used in the certificate.	Ask the Certification Authority to reissue the certificate using the MD5 or SHA1 hash algorithm.
The certificate file size is too large.	Normal certificate files never result in an Import error due to excess size. There's a possibility that the certificate file may be incorrect or multiple certificates may be contained, such as certificate chain. Ask the Certifica- tion Authority to issue the correct certificate.

## Failed to connect in EAP Mode

## Phenomenon:

Wireless communication has no problem in the Open Mode and WPA-PSK Mode, but authentication fails when the EAP Mode is set.

- A word indicating authentication error is recorded in RADIUS server log.

- 'Fail (EAP-TLS+TKIP)' is described in Authentication Status column of Network Summary , for example.

Possible cause	What to do
The settings of the access point are incorrect.	<ul> <li>Check the settings of the access point and set themt correctly.</li> <li>An example of the setting items you should check:</li> <li>Network settings (IP address, the subnet mask and the default gateway have been set correctly)</li> <li>EAP settings (IP address, the port number, Shared secret, etc., of the RADIUS server have been set correctly)</li> <li>Encryption Method setting (has been set to TKIP)</li> </ul>
RADIUS server setting are incorrect.	<ul> <li>Check the settings of the RADIUS server and set them correctly.</li> <li>An example of the setting items you should check:</li> <li>Authenticator (access point) settings (access point's IP address, the authentication method that is permitted, shared secret, etc., have been set correctly)</li> <li>EAP user registration (EAP user name, certificate, etc., have been set correctly)</li> <li>Server certificate (the correct server certificate has been installed)</li> </ul>
C9600's EAP user name setting is incorrect.	Check the EAP user name with the network administrator and change the C9600 setting to the correct one.
The client certificate imported to C9600 is incorrect.	Ask the network administrator to distribute the certificate that corresponds to the EAP user name and can be authenticated by the RADIUS server and import it to C9600.
The CA certificate imported to C9600 is incorrect.	Ask the network administrator to distribute the certificate issued by the CA that directly issues the server certificate of the RADIUS server, and import it to C9600.
Authentication method does not match the RADIUS server.	Change the RADIUS server setting and set EAP-TLS authentication Enable.
The authentication method does not match in the C9600 and the access point.	Check the EAP type that is supported by the access point and check if it supports EAP-TLS.
The encryption method does not match in the C9600 and the access point.	Change the encryption method of the access point to 'TKIP'.
Cipher Suite does not match in C9600 and RADIUS server. (Cipher Suite indicates the key method and encryption method combinations in EAP- TLS authentication.)	Change the RADIUS server setting and set Cipher Suite supported in the C9600 Enable. The following Cipher Suites are supported in the C9600: SSL3_TXT_EDH_RSA_DES_192_CBC3_SHA SSL3_TXT_EDH_DSS_DES_192_CBC3_SHA TLS1_TXT_DHE_DSS_WITH_RC4_128_SHA SSL3_TXT_EDH_RSA_DES_64_CBC_SHA * DES 64bit encryption SSL3_TXT_EDH_DSS_DES_64_CBC_SHA * DES 64bit encryption SSL3_TXT_RSA_DES_192_CBC3_SHA SSL3_TXT_RSA_RC4_128_SHA SSL3_TXT_RSA_RC4_128_SHA SSL3_TXT_RSA_RC4_128_MD5 SSL3_TXT_RSA_DES_64_CBC_SHA

# Communication is occasionally disrupted in EAP Mode.

## Phenomenon:

Wireless communication takes place in EAP Mode, but it is occasionally disrupted. Communication is never disrupted in Open Mode or WPA-PSK Mode.

Possible cause	What to do
Communication is disrupted due to re- authentication. * In EAP Mode, re-authentication is regularly required, depending on the access point/RADIUS server setting. During re-authentication, wireless connection is disrupted.	Change the re-authentication interval of the access point or RADIUS server setting to a longer one. Even with this change, a possibility remains for this phenomenon to occur unless you disable the re-authentication. If you disable the re-authentication, it may compromise the security.

## 7.8 Wireless LAN Card Trouble Shooting

## 7.8.1 Connection Error in Web browser

If you cannot display the printer setup page with "https://<printer's IP address>" from Web browser, do the following:

## Try with http://<printer's IP address.

1) If the printer setup page is displayed with this, either of the following may be the reason for the above problem:

Refer to the applicable section and correct the problem:

- A certificate has not been created. (Or certificate creation has failed.)  $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.1.1 Have you created the certificate?
- The certificate has been created, but SSL/TLS setting is off.  $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.1.2 Is SSL/TLS set to 'ON'?
- 2) If the printer setup page is not displayed with this, either of the following may be the reason for the above problem:
  - Browser's version is old.
    - $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.1.3 Check the version of the Web browser.
  - The Cipher Level is set to Strong.
    - $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.1.4 Check the printer's encryption strength.
  - The browser does not support the printer's key exchange method. (Compatibility problem)  $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.1.5 Check the key exchange method of the certificate.

#### 7.8.1.1 Have you created the certificate?

Log in as administrator and display Security  $\rightarrow$  Cipher (SSL/ TLS).

If the displayed screen looks like the one on the right, the printer's certificate has not been created. (If you have failed to create a certificate, you will be back to this screen, too.)

What to do: Create a certificate following the procedure described in 5.2 Creating a certificate from Web browser or 5.3 Creating a certificate from Admin Manager.



Figure 1 Before a certificate is created (default state)

7.8.1.2 Has SSL/TLS been set to "ON"?

Log in as administrator and display Security  $\rightarrow$  Cipher (SSL/TLS).

If the displayed screen looks line the one on the right, the SSL/ TLS has been set to "OFF."

What to do: Set the SSL/TLS to "ON".

Click Submit.

a fill Han abreaton 200			
Pet + (7) 2 2 2	A C	Arteste Col 25	NOA
	Cal Johnson Y	Manager & St.	194 (11 4 <b>0</b> )
The second second second	r geol (strat. tell	0800	OKI
atus Printer Net	twork Print	Job List Security	Maintenance Links
and the state	ACCORDING TO ACT INCOME		Dry that doubt Base Blies
of Stiffmanny	Encryption 9	status	back the content of the continuous
	printer.	ing non-seconds and c	NUMBER OF STREET, STRE
And and a design of the local division of th	Increations	Not lised	
	99L/TLS	OFF #	
	Certificate:	Crtificate Type	Certification Authority signed
		Common Name	indep/21ac/72 cm/2 takasalada co.in
		Organization	Cki Data Corporation
		Organizational Unit	Software Development Dept-2 Team3 Ve
		State, Province	Quma
		Country/Region	(J#
		Canada Bisma	Taxand by
	manue 1 c	Second Interest Roberts	to condictioners, Energy Consulty store about and
	soomit j s	raucei leases proses	to send changes. Press cancer to clear changes
			Jucirtu
AND ALL PROPERTY AND ADDRESS OF	-		
Edi you Ppostat Jos	94		
mat + () = =	Co Daves	trante @ C.	284
	ryption_office.htm		
	0	9600	OKI
tatus Printer Net	twork Print	Job List Securit	Maintenance Unks
Produced (D. 1911			Dry Close Hold River Biller
IF ITTERS	Encryption S	status	back the content of the partificate stored
(am-011/11.0)	printer.	in the second second	
Territoria dana	Increations	Not lised	
	(SSL/TLS	OFF R	
	_		
	Certificate:	Crtificate Type	Certification Authority signed
		Company Name	index 21 ar 72 card tak at all all co. in
		Organization	Cki Data Corporation
		Organizational Unit	Software Development Dept.2 Team3 Ve
		State/Province	Guma
		Country,Region	39
		Constan Binma	Taxued by
1		and the fact of a local	
-	submit 6	Cancel Press Subert	to send changes. Press Cancel to clear changes
Hef.			Lixefrite
\$400 Alkinositi branset I	lepterer:		
	10 Dans	Artesta Col Co.	N = A
	the product of	1 mm 0 20	1910319
1 HE LIG 17, 177 18 (8)	- Hear Tangar Sea	0600	OVI
		9000	UNI
Net Prater Net	Press	Second Second	Dry Shert Hold Kill Rases Billion
a libertary	Encryption S	status	
A COLUMN TWO	rieu can change S printer.	SL/TLS settings and c	heck the content of the certificate stored
and the second second	Manager and		
and the second second	Encryptions	Not Used	
	SSL/TLS		
	Cetter Level	standard w	And the state of a state of a state of a
	Contractor.	Crifficate Type	Certification Authority signed
		Common Name	pdcp21ac72.cm2 takatali oki.co.jp
		Organization	Oki Data Corporation
		and the second sec	portware Development Dept.2 Team3 Ve
		Locality	Tai azaki-shi
		Locality State,Province	Takazaki-shi Gurma
		Locality State,Province Country/Region	Takazaki-shi Gurma JP
		Locality State,Province Country,Region	Takazaki-shi Gurma 39 Torond by
4		Country/Region	Takazaki-shi Gurma JP Takazaki Uv
	Submit (	Locality State,Province Country/Region Press Submit	Takazaki-dN Guma (p) Takazaki kw Takazaki kw ta send Changes, Press Cancel to clear sharges

#### 7.8.1.3 Confirm the version of Web browser

Confirm the version of Web browser you are using.

#### How to confirm the version:

Internet Explorer

Start the browser and confirm it from  $\text{Help} \rightarrow \text{About}$ Internet Explorer.

The recommended version is InternetExplorer5.5 or higher.

What to do: Install the latest version Web browser. Or install a pack for stronger cipher level support.

> When the version older than those recommended is used, sometimes, communication becomes possible if the printer's encryption strength is set to "Weak". If the encryption strength is set to "Weak", however, the Security level becomes low. For how to change the encryption strength, refer to 7.8.1.4 Check the printer's encryption strength.



## Netscape

Start the Web browser and confirm it from Help  $\rightarrow$  About Netscape.

The recommended version is Netscape 6.0 or higher.

What to do: Install the latest version Web browser.

When the version older than those recommended is used, sometimes, communication becomes possible if the printer's encryption strength is set to "Weak". If the encryption strength is set to "Weak", however, the security level becomes low. For how to change the encryption strength, refer to 7.8.1.4 Check the printer's encryption strength.



## 7.8.1.4 Check the printer's encryption strength

In the browser version indication you confirmed in "Check the version of Web browser of 7.8.1.3", you see the description of the browser's Cipher Strength. If the browser whose Cipher Strength is not set to 128bit here, it cannot communicate with the printer's encryption strength "Standard".

Either upgrade the browser to 128bit (stronger cipher support) or change the printer's encryption strength setting to "Weak".



Changing the encryption strength setting from AdminManager

1) Start AdminManager and select the printer whose setting you want to change, from the list that is displayed.

Model Name	Ethernet Address	IF Address	Print Server Nome
MLETB12	00.80.87 A4 1E 65	10.37.177.184	
MLETB12	00/80/87/84/13/1A	10.37.177.104	ML84131A
MLETB12	00 80 87 64 A4 D4	10.37.177.234	ML54A4D4
MLETB12	00/80/87 A4 1E C8	10.37.177.158	
MLETBO8	00-80-92-15:77-7D	10 37 177 54	ML1E777D
OHLAN 9200e	00 00 07 04 47 37	-10.37 177 199	GK3-C3886-C44737-P
MLETBII	00 00 92 08 89.07	10.37 177 159	WC068507
\$	and the second se	and the local division of the local division	CONSTRUCTION OF
7 Old Destres are!	found in the network.	EIA [ 00:80:87:C4:47:37 ]	IP[10.37.177.198]

 Click on the Set Oki Device button, or select Setting and then Set Oki Device to open the setting dialog box.



3) Type in admin password and open the setting dialog box as administrator.



?

4) Click on SSL/TLS tab.

5) Check Encryption Strength.

6) Set the Encryption Strength to Weak and click Apply button.

7) Verify the setting contents and click OK.

- 8) When the confirmation message appears, click Yes. (The NIC reboots to reflect the setting value.)
- 9) When that printer is displayed in the list again, the setting has been completed.

SNMP   E-Mail(Send)   E-Mail(Receive)   S	NTP Maintenance SSL/TLS
admin Password	
	Change
ON MP Write Community	
SIMME WORL COMMUNITY	
	Change
SNMP Read Community	
	Change
	Change DI OT
	Change SLOT
Initialize	Apply Cancel
	Sense.
KI Device Setup [ SLOT 1 ]	
SNRP   E-Mail(Send)   E-Mail(Receive)   S	NTP Maintenance Source
Vise Cipher(SSL/TLS)	
Encryption Strongth	Standard
6 Self-signer Certificate	Create Cert Roate
C CA-signed Certificate	
	View Certificate Info
	Delete Certificate
Initialize	Apply Cancel
OKI Davica Setup [ SLOT 1 ]	2 2
SNMP   E-Mail(Send)   E-Mail(Receive)   S	NTP Maintenance SSUILS
G Use Cipher(SSL/TLS)	
Encryption Strongth	Weak
6 Seffequer Deskinte	Create Cert Acate
C CANNER CARTINE	
	View Certificate Info.
	Delete Certificate
Initialize	Apply Cancel
OKI Device Setup	
the contents of the changes to configur	auon items.
(SSL/TLS)	
Enclyption strongth : Weak	
J	
Do you wish to send the setting to OKI D	Device.
OK	Cancel
ldminManager	
(?) Update is completed.	
Do you wish to reset OKI Device?	
Yes No	
AdminManager	
the Party Sales and the sales	e de la compañía de l
ne skatus setup Option Help	
	<b>1</b>
Nodel Name Ethernet Address Model Name Ethernet Address 08 08 07 At 15 66	IF Address Print Server Name
Attus         Deck         Option         Heip           Model Name         Ethernet Address         Matrix         Matrix           MatFB12         0.86 67 34 13 1A         MatFB12         0.86 67 34 13 1A           MatFB12         0.86 67 34 13 1A         MatFB12         0.86 67 34 14 1A	IP Address         Print Server Name           10.37 1727 194         10.37 1727 194           10.37 1727 204         ML.84131A           10.37 172 204         ML.84134A
Nodel Name         Emernel Address           Martin         Emernel Address           Martinization         C08 057 At 18 45	IP Address         Print Server Name           1027.177.184         1027.177.184           1027.177.194         MLS4131A           1027.177.194         MLS4431A           1027.177.194         MLS4431A           1027.177.194         MLS44124           1027.177.195         MLS44124           1027.177.195         MLS4127
Antility Setup         Option         Page         Page	IP Aggress         Print Server Nume           1027.177.194         MLS4131A           1027.177.194         MLS4131A           1027.177.194         MLS4431A           1027.177.195         MLS42404           1027.177.195         ML57270           1027.177.195         ML57270           1027.177.195         ML52770           1027.177.195         ML52770           1027.177.195         ML52770           1027.077.197         ML500000 044127/PB 3

OKI Davice Setup [ SLOT 1 ]

EA [00:80:87:C4:47:37]

IP[10.37.177.19

What to do: Set the printer's encryption strength to "Weak".

Changing the encryption strength setting from Telnet

*Caution:* Telnet cannot be used in the initial state. Telenet must be set to Enable to change the printer's encryption setting.

Type "telnet <printer's IP address>" at the command prompt (DOS prompt) and hit Return.

Use administrator's user name and password for connection.



[4: Security Config]→[5 : Cipher(SSL/TLS)]→[2 : Encryption Strength] → Change the Encryption Strength (1: Strong 2: Standard 3: Weak).

Service of the servic	
Toinet 10.37.177.143	
logint root	
'root' user needs password	
password: User 'root' lossed in.	
	den sin och andre internet i statistick i stratistick och
No. MENU(level.1)	Slot1 : 100/10 Base Nired Ethernet
1 : Status / Information	
2 : Printer Config 2 : Network Config	
4 : Security Config	
5 : Maintenance	
Please select(1 - 99)? 4	
N	An an a second with an an an an an an
No. MENU(level.2)	Slot1 : IUU/IU base fired Ethernet
1 : Protocol QN/QFF	
2 : Protocol Fort 4 : 1P Filtering	
5 : Cipher(SSL/TLS)	
6 : Password	
Please select(1 - 99)? 5	
Toinet 10.37.177.143	
1 · Status / Information	
2 : Printer Config	
3 : Network Config	
5 : Maintenance	
99 : Exit Setup	
Please select(1 + 89)? 4	
No. MENU(level.2)	Slot1 : 100/10 Base Nired Ethernet
1 · Protocol (N/IFE	
2 : Protocol Port	
4 : IP Filtering	
8 : Password	
99 : Back to prior menu	
rieabe belecc(i - 33): 5	
No. MENU(level.3)	Slot1 : 100/10 Base Nired Ethernet
1 : Cipher(SSL/TLS)	: 0FF
2 : Encryption Strength	: Standard
Please select(1 - 99)? 2_	
Toinet 10.37.177.143	-
99 : Exit Setup	
riesse select(1 - 33)? 4	
No. WENU (level.2)	Slot1 : 100/10 Base Wired Ethernet
1 : Protocol (N/OFF	
2 : Protocol Part	
4 : IP Filtering 5 : Cirber(SSL/ILS)	
6 : Password	
99 : Back to prior menu Please collect(1 = 9932 E	
ribase select() = 33)/ 3	
No. MENU(level.3)	Slot1 ± 100/10 Base Wired Ethernet
1 : Cipher (SSL/TLS)	: OFF
2 : Encryption Strength	: Standard
38 : Back to prior menu Please select(1 - 99)2 2	
-	
Encryption Strength	
2 : Standard	
3 : Meak	
ricase selectii - olt d	

7.8.1.5 Check the key exchange method of the certificate

Check the key exchange method of the certificate stored in the printer.

There is a possibility that the browser does not support the key exchange method that has been selected.

Refer to the browser key exchange method support state (Appendix C), and create the certificate of the appropriate key exchange method again or change the browser to the one that supports the selected key exchange method.

When you decide to create the certificate again, refer to 5.2 Creating a certificate from Web browse, or 5.3 Creating a certificate from AdminManager.

How to confirm the key exchange method

You can confirm the key exchange method with AdminManager and Network Information.

If you cannot display the printer setup page by the Web browser, confirm the key exchange method by using AdminManager or printing Network Information.

Steps to confirm the key exchange method are shown below:

Confirming the key exchange method by AdminManager

- 1) Start AdminManager and select the printer you want to confirm, from the list that has been displayed.
- Administraterager
   Image: Control of C
- Click on the Set Oki Device button, or select Setting and then Set Oki Device to open the setting dialog box.
- 3) Type in admin password and open the setting dialog box as administrator.
- 4) Click on SSL/TLS Tab.



Ouest user (read only) OK



5) Click View Certificate Info... button.

6) Check the item Key Exchange method.

dP   E-Mail(Send)   E-Mail(Receive)   Si	NTP Maintenance SSL/TLS	4
Use Cipher(SSL/TLS)		
Encryption Strongth	Standard	-
🕫 Settagner Gestione		1
C. DA-Monie Certificate		
	View Certificate Info	D
	Delete Certificate	1
		-
Initialize	Apply Cance	n
Iniĝialize	Apply Cance	ri
IniBialize	Apply Carce	?
Initialize	Apply Cance	?
Initialize	Apply Cance Setf-signed Certificate 10.37.177.196	?
Initialize signed Certificate Certificate information is set as follows Certificate Type Common Name Organization	Apply Cance Self-signed Certificate 10.37.177.198 Oli Data Corporation	
Initialize  signed Certificate  Certificate information is set as follows  Certificate Type Common Name Organization Organization	Apply Cance Self-signed Certificate 10.37.177.198 Oki Data Corporation Software Development 2	
Initialize  signed Certificate  Certificate Information is set as follows Certificate Type Common Name Organizational Unit Locality	Apply Cance Self-signed Certificate 10.37.177.198 Cki Data Corporation Software Development 2 Talkasoki-shi	
Initialize	Apply Cance Self-signed Certificate 10.37.177.189 Oki Data Corporation Software Development 2 Takosaki-shi Qurma	2
Initialize  Signed Certificate  Certificate Information is set as follows  Certificate Type Common Name Organization Organization Organization Locality StateFrowince Country/Region	Apply Cance Self-signed Certificate 10.37.477.198 Oki Data Corporation Software Development 2 Takasaki-shi Gurmin JP	
Initialize  signed Certificate  Certificate information is set as follows  Certificate Type Common Name Organizational Unit Locality State/Province Country/Region  Edge Exchange method	Apply Cance Self-signed Certificate 10.37.177.198 Oki Data Corporation Software Development 2 Takaoaki-shi Qurma JP RSA	?
Initialize  signed Certificate  Certificate information is set as follows  Certificate Type Common Name Organization Organization Unit Locality StateProvince Country/Region  Key Exchange method Key atze	Apply Cance Self-signed Certificate 10.37.177.198 Oki Data Corporation Software Development 2 Takasaki-chi Gurnine JP RSA 1024bit	?
Initialize  signed Certificate  Certificate Information is set as follows  Certificate Type Common Name Organization Organization Organization Cognicational Unit Locality StateFrovince Country/Region Key Exchange method Key size Beain Certificate validity period	Apply Cance Self-signed Certificate 10.37.177.180 Oki Data Corporation Software Development 2 Takasaki-shi Gurmin JP RSA 1024bit 10662004.12:52.39.AM	?
Initialize  signed Certificate  Certificate Information is set as follows  Certificate Type Common Name Organization Organization Organization Unit Locality StateProvince Country/Region  Key size Begin Certificate validity period End Certificate validity period	Apply Cance Self-signed Certificate 10.37.177.198 Oki Data Corporation Software Development 2 Takosaki-shi Ournin J. RSA 1024bit 1024bit 1024bit 1024bit 1024bit 1024bit 1024bit 1024bit 1024bit	1

Depending on the version, the browser may not support Diffie-Hellman(DSS).

Confirming the key exchange method by printing Network Information

When a valid certificate is stored in the printer, the user can confirm the certificate information by printing Network Information.

How to print Network Information from the operator panel is shown below:

Press Menu keys (up and down arrow keys) and execute: "Print Information" (ENTER)  $\rightarrow$  "Network" (ENTER)  $\rightarrow$  "Slot1: 100/10Base" (ENTER)  $\rightarrow$  "Print Information" (ENTER).

Confirm Key Exchange method under Security on the page 4 of the Network Information that has been printed.

Cipher(SSL/TLS)	Enable
Cipher Level	Standard
Certificate Information	
Certificate Type	Self signed
The term of validity	26/09/2003 - 25/09/2004
Self signed certificate Information	
Certificate Version	v3
Serial Number	1234567890
Issuer Information	
CommonName	192.168.1.1
Organization	OKI DATA Corp.
Subject Information	
CommonName	192.168.1.1
Organization	OKI DATA Corp.
Key Exchange method	RSA
Key Size	1024bit
P Filtering	Enable
Email Domain Filtering	
Domain Filtering	Enable
Filter Policy	Include
Domain Name 1	abcdefg-1.ne.jp
Domain Name 2	abcdefg-2.ne.jp
Domain Name 3	abcdefg-3.ne.jp
Domain Name 4	abcdefg-4.ne.jp
Domain Name 5	abcdefg-5.ne.jp

Figure 2 How to confirm the key exchange method in Network Information

### 7.8.2 Cannot Print

If you cannot print using the IPP printer for encryption, do the following:

## Try connecting with http://<printer's IP address>.

1) If the printer setup page is displayed with this, either of the following may be the reason for the above problem:

Refer to the applicable section and correct the problem:

- The certificate has not been created. (Or certificate creation has failed.)  $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.1.1 Have you created the certificate?
- The certificate has been created, but SSL/TLS setting is off.  $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.1.2 Is SSL/TLS set to 'ON'?
- 2) If the printer setup page is not displayed with this, either of the following may be the reason for the above problem:

Refer to the applicable section and correct the problem:

- Browser's version is old.
  - $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.1.3 Check the Version of the Web Browser.
- The Encryption Strength is set to Strong.

 $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.1.4 Check the printer's encryption strength.

- The browser does not support the printer's key exchange method. (Compatibility problem)
   → Refer to 7.8.1.5 Check the printer's key change method.
- OS does not support IPP printing with encryption.  $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.2.1 Check Operating System (OS).
- Printer with IPP encryption has not been created.
   → Refer to 7.8.2.2 Have you created the printer?
- Printer's IPP setting is not set to Enable.
   → Refer to 7.8.2.3 Is IPP set to Enable?

#### 7.8.2.1 Check Operating System (OS)

IPP printing (with encryption) is possible only in Windows2000 and WindowsXP.

It is not supported in other OSes.

#### 7.8.2.2 Have you created the printer?

There's a possibility that the printer has not been created correctly.

For IPP printing (with encryption), you must use URL https://<printer's IP address>/ipp as the port when you are creating a printer.

For the details of how to create a printer, refer to 5.6.1.2 Creating IPP printer for encryption

7.8.2.3 Is IPP Set to Enable?

IPP setting may not be set to Enable.

In the printer's initial setting, IPP is set to Disable.

To use the IPP printing, you need to set the printer's IPP setting to Enable.

For how to change the IPP setting, refer to 5.4.2.1Enabling the printer's IPP setting.

## 7.8.3 Can't Create a Certificate

When you cannot create a certificate, you may have the following situations:

Refer to the applicable section and correct the problem:

- Information on some of the required items is missing.
  - $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.3.1 Information on some of the required items is missing.
- The printer is in the middle of printing operation.

 $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.3.2 Printer is in the middle of printing operation.

7.8.3.1 Information on some of the required items is missing.

Unless information on all the required items is entered, you cannot create a certificate.

When creating a certificate, you must enter information on CommonName, Organization, Locality, State/ Province and Country/Region. (Organization Unit may be omitted.)

What to do: Enter appropriate values for all the required items and execute the creation of the certificate. For the details of the items to enter, refer to 5.1.3 Required user entry items for creating a certificate.

For more about how to create a certificate, refer to 5.2 Creating a Certificate from Web Browser or 5.3 Creating a Certificate from AdminManager.

7.8.3.2 The printer is in the middle of printing operation.

When the printing is in the middle of printing operation, you cannot create a certificate. (Printing operation has the priority over the creation of the certificate.)

What to do: Create a certificate when all the other operations have been completed.

When creating a self-signed certificate, creating CSR of a certificate created by a certification authority and installing the certificate, you must make sure that the printer does not engage in other activities (e.g. printing) until the operations (creating a self-signed certificate, creating CSR and installing the certificate) are completed.

## 7.8.4 Can't Install the Certificate

If the installation of the certificate fails, you may have the following situations:

Refer to the applicable section and correct the problem:

- The user has changed the printer's IP address to a different IP address from the one used at the time when "CSR was created".
  - $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.4.1 The printer's IP address has been changed.
- The user executed Initialize Network Card in the state that he had applied to the certification authority for the issuance of the certificate (waiting for the installation of the certificate).

 $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.4.2 Executed Initialize Network Card.

- The user executed Delete CSR in the state that he had applied to the certification authority for the issuance of the certificate (waiting for the installation of the certificate).
   → Refer to 7.8.4.3 Executed Delete CSR.
- Intermediate certificate has been installed
  - $\rightarrow$  Refer to 7.8.4.4 Want to install an intermediate certificate.

## 7.8.4.1 Printer's IPP address has been changed

Installation of the certificate will fail if the printer's IP address is different from the "IP address when CSR was created". (An error will result.)

If the setting that has been changed is only the "Printer's IP address", the error ceases to occur if you return the IP address to the original one.

- What to do: Reset the printer's IP address to the "IP address when CSR was created" and install the certificate again.
  - *Caution:* Do not change the printer settings during the procedure to create the certificate signed by a certification authority (from creating CSR to installing the certificate). If you do so, the certificate that has been issued becomes invalid, and you'll have to perform the procedure to create a certificate all over again. If you change the printer settings after you have obtained the certificate, "Security Alert" will be displayed on the Web browser. If the printer's IP address is changed, the certificate becomes invalid. (In case of a CA-signed certificate with a fee, an extra fee may be charged for creating the certificate again.) For the detail, contact the certification authority.

#### 7.8.4.2 Executed Initialize Network Card

If you initialize Network Card (which sets factory default) during the procedure to create the certificate signed by a certification authority (from creating CSR to installing the certificate), the setting information of the certificate will be lost. The information that has been deleted will never be recovered. (Even if you enter the same information as before, you will not be able to create the same certificate.)

What to do: Perform the procedure to create the certificate all over again. (The certificate that has been applied to the Certification Authority is already void.)

## 7.8.4.3 Executed Delete CSR

If you delete CSR (delete the certificate) during the procedure to create the certificate signed by a certification authority (from creating CSR to installing the certificate), the setting information of the certificate will be lost. The information that has been deleted will never be recovered. (Even if you enter the same information as before, you will not be able to create the same certificate.)

What to do: Perform the procedure to create the certificate all over again. (The certificate that has been applied to the certification authority is already void.)

2

se(s):

Instal Certificate...) Issuer Statement

×

## 7.8.4.4 Want to install an intermediate certificate

Some certification authorities may use a form to install the SSL server certificate (printer certificate) and the intermediate certificate to the printer.

C9600 supports the installation of only one certificate. Therefore you cannot install an intermediate certificate to the C9600 printer. To the printer, you must install the SSL server certificate.

To install an intermediate certificate, install it to a client PC (browser), not to the printer.

For how to install an intermediate certificate to a client PC (browser), refer to the steps described below:

Installing an intermediate certificate (or CA Certificate) to a client PC (browser)

## [Steps]

1) Double click an intermediate certificate(or CA certificate) issued by the certification authority on the client PC and display it.

Example: Comodo's intermediate CA certificate comes in text (PEM) format: ComodoJapanCA.crt and the binary format: ComodoJapanCA.cer, and you can open it in either format. (Same result)

Certificate

Certificate Information

This certificate is intended for the following purp

Protects e-mail messages
 Proves your identity to a remote computer
 Proves your identity of a remote computer
 Ensures the identity of a remote computer
 Protects software from aberetion after publication
 +1.3.6.1.4.1.6334.1.0

\* Refer to the certification authority's statement for details.

Issued to: Comodo Japan CA.

Issued by: GTE CyberTrust Global Root

Valid from 6/17/2004 to 0/27/2012

Open ComodoJapanCA.crt (or ComodoJapanCA.cer).

2) In the General tab of the Certificate popup window, click Install Certificate... button.

 Certificate Import Wizard is displayed. Install the certificate following the steps that are shown. Select Automatically select the certificate store based on the type of certificate, then the certificate is installed automatically.



## 7.8.5 Other Questions

This section covers more questions users may ask.

## 7.8.5.1 Time required for creating a certificate

The time required for creating a certificate is more likely to be as follows, varying with the key exchange method (RSA, Diffie-Hellman (DSS)) and the key size:

(Variation is from about -30 to +30%)

		F	Public key size	e
	ROA	512bits	1,024bits	2,048bits
Creating a se	elf-signed certificate	6	8	25
CA-signed	Creating CSR*1	7	10	23
certificate	Installing the certificate	6	6	6

Table 7-5 Time for creating a Certificate (for RSA) Unit: Sec

\*1: CSR (Certificate Signing Request)

	Table 7-6	Time for creating	a certificate	(for DSS	) Unit: Sec
--	-----------	-------------------	---------------	----------	-------------

Diff		F	Public key size	Э
Dilli	e-neiiman(DSS)	512bits	1,024bits	2,048bits
Creating a se	If-signed certificate	21	42	129* <sup>2</sup>
CA-signed	Creating CSR	35	27	123
certificate	Installing the certificate	8	6	8

\*2: In case of 2048bits key, it may take about 3

minutes (165sec) to create the certificate and CSR.

#### 7.8.5.2 Communication time when encryption function is enabled

We have compared the communication time when the encryption feature is used against the normal communication time, and describe the result in this section.

The following are the time displayed on Web's TOP page:

Web's TOP page means the first screen that is displayed in the Web screen for the printer setup.

Table 7-7 Time displayed on Web's TOP page (for RSA) Unit: Sec

		F	Public key size	Э	No operation
noA		512bits	1,024bits	2,048bits	No encryption
Cipher level	Strong	5	5	7	
	Standard	5	5	7	3
	Weak	4	5	7	

Table 7-8 Time displayed on Web's TOP page (for Diffie-Hellman (DSS)) Unit: Sec

		F	Public key size	Ð	No operation
Dime-neima	IN(D55)	512bits	1,024bits	2,048bits	No encryption
Cipher level	Strong	5	5	6	
	Standard	5	5	6	3
	Weak	-	-	-	

Communication time for IPP printing is shown below:

As a print job, we used PCL's NULL Data(31,464,978bytes).

(NULL Data means the data that has been processed to execute the PCL process as least as possible and to enable the network communication time to be measured.)

		F	Public key size	э	No operatio
ROA		512bits	1,024bits	2,048bits	
Cipher level	Strong	52	52	52	
	Standard	53	52	52	41
	Weak	51	52	53	

Table 7-9 IPP printing (for RSA) Unit: Sec

Table 7-10	IPP	printing	(for	Diffie-Hellman	(DSS)	Unit: Sec
------------	-----	----------	------	----------------	-------	-----------

Diffic Hollma		F	Public key size	e	No open/etic
Dime-Heiima	in(DSS)	512bits	1,024bits	2,048bits	No encryptio
Cipher level	Strong	53	52	51	
	Standard	53	52	51	41
	Weak	-	-	-	

7.8.5.3 Is encrypted printing possible with something other than IPP?

- Answer: Printing with encryption is not possible with anything other than IPP. Printing with encryption is possible only with IPP.
- 7.8.5.4 What will happen if SSL/TLS is turned OFF after creating (or installing) a certificate? Answer: The certificate remains stored.

If you set the SSL/TLS to ON again, that certificate becomes available for you to use.

- 7.8.5.5 Want to change the port number
  - Answer: The port number for SSL/TLS communication is fixed to 443. You can not change it.

7.8.5.6 Error "The security certificate was issued by a company you have not chosen to trust" is displayed

When this error is displayed, you may have the following situations:

The certificate installed in the printer is a self-signed certificate. Or the certificate installed in the printer is a CA-signed certificate and either the CA certificate by the Certification Authority or an intermediate certificate is not installed in the client PC.

In case of a self-signed certificate, all you have to do is to install the printer's self-signed certificate in the client PC; then, the error (Security Alert) will no longer appear.)

In case of a CA-signed certificate, all you have to do is to install the CA certificate or the intermediate certificate by CA in the client PC; then, the error (Security Alert) will no longer appear.)

What to do: Install the certificate in the client PC (browser).

[Steps]

1) Click View Certificate on the error screen (Security Alert) that is displayed.

2) In the General tab of the Certificate popup window, click Install Certificate... button.



Issued to: 10.37.177.198 Issued by: 10.37.177.198 Valid from 10/25/2004 to 12/31/2049

Instal Certificate ....

OK

 Certificate Import Wizard is displayed. Install the certificate following the steps that are shown. Select Automatically select the certificate store based on the type of certificate, then the certificate is installed automatically.

	Welcome to the Certificate Impor Wizard This whard helps you copy certificates, certificate trust lists, and certificate revocation tists from your disk to a certificate store. A certificate, which is issued by a certification authority, a confination of your identity and contains information used to produce data or to establish secure network corrections. A certificate store is the system area where certificates are lead. To continue, cick Next.
	< bal (Next>) Care
cate Import Wizard	Can
cate Import Wizard	< 0x3 (Next>) Can
cate Import Wizard ificate Store Catificate stores are syst	en areas vhere certificates are lept.
cate Import Wizard dicate Store Cetificate stores are syst Windows can automaticat	en areas where ortificates are kept.
cate Import Wizard ificate Store Catificate stores are syst Windows can automatical Windows can automatical Disea of unification	en areas where certificates are kept.
cate Import Wiscard ficate Store Catificate stores are syst Windows can automatical Windows can automatical Chara de ortificates porticate store	en areas where certificates are kept. select a certificate store, or you can specify a location for the certificate store based on the type of certificate in the following store

7.8.5.7 Error "The security certificate has an invalid name or the name does not match the site name..." is displayed.

The printer's IP address differs from the IP address described in the certificate or the IP address when the certificate was created.

What to do: Return the printer's IP address to the one when the self-signed certificate was created or when the CSR was created.

# 8. CONNECTION DIAGRAM

# 8.1 Check Resistance Value














# 8.2 Diagram of Part Layout of Various PCB

(1)-1 Engine Control PWB (S2V-2 PWB: 600dpi)





(1)-2 Engine Control PWB (S2V-3 PWB: 1200dpi)

(2) Motor Driver PWB (S2M PWB)



#### (3)-1 Main Controller PWB : HMO



#### (3)-2 Main Controller PWB : ASP



### (4) LED Control PWB





#### (5) Control Panel PWB (X7G- PWB)



(6) ID System Sensor PWB(SGG-PWB)



(7) Entrance Sensor PWB (S2C-PWB)



(8) Paper Size Detection PWB (S2S- PWB)



(9) Rear Sensor PWB (S2R- PWB)

	0
	Solenoid Solenoid
$ \begin{array}{c c} RSNS \\ \hline 0 \circ \circ$	0

(10) Color Drift Sensor PWB (S2Z- PWB)



(11) Tray Control PWB (V72-1- PWB)



#### (12) Duplex Control PWB (V72-2- PWB)



(13) Inverter PWB (V72-3- PWB)



(14) Disposal Toner, Gear, Belt Rotation, Disposal Toner Sensor PWB (HAL-PWB)



# 9. ERROR MESSAGE LIST

### 9.1 Message Chart of C9600

Take appropriet actions for messages provided on the control panel of your printer. In the table, "CCCC" shows the toner color (cyan, magenta, yellow or black).

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures
126:Condensing Error	Condensation occurs in a printer.	Turn off the power and wait for a while.
Download Error	Download error.	Re-start a printer.
Communication Error	A communication error occurs.	Contact with a customer center.
EEPROM Reset	EEPROM is in resetting.	Wait for a while.
Initializing	The printer is in initializing.	Wait for a while.
NON OEM %COLOR% TONER DETECTED	A genuine CCCC toner cartridge is not installed.	Possible to operate even if a toner cartridge other than genuine CCCC is used.
PS Memory Overflow	Lack of a memory space while printing with a PS driver.	Either increase memory space or make a print data simple.
PU Flash Error	A communication error occurs.	Contact with a customer center
RAM Check nnn%	RAM checking is in process.	Wait for a while
Restarting	The printer is in restarting.	Wait for a while
USB I/F Error	USB Interface error.	Press the ON Line button to clear out an error.
Check Image Drum CCCC	A displayed image drum car- tridge is not installed correctly.	Re-install a displlayed image drum cartridge.
Yellow Toner Not Installed	A yellow toner cartridge is not installed in a printer or an unrecognized yellow toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine yellow toner cartridge.
Non Genuine Yellow Toner	An unrecognized yellow toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine yellow toner cartridge.
Yellow Toner Empty	A yellow toner cartridge runs out or a genuine yellow toner cartridge is not installed.	Install a new genuine yellow toner cartridge.
Yellow Toner Low	The printer runs out of a yellow toner soon.	Prepare a new yellow toner cartridge but unnecessary to change.
Yellow Toner Sensor Error	A censor error of the yellow toner occurs.	Remove a yellow toner cartridge and re-install it. Contact with a customer center if an error still remains.
Yellow Image Drum Near Life	A life of the image drum is about to end.	Prepare a new yellow image drum cartridge but unnecessary to change.
Yellow Image Drum Life	It is time to change a yellow image drum.	Change to a new yellow image drum cartridge.
Initializing	The printer is in initializing.	Wait for a while.
Install New Image Drum Image Drum Life CCCC	It is time to change a displayed drum cartridge.	Change to a new image drum cartridge.
Image Drum Life CCCC	It is time to change a displayed drum cartridge.	Change to a new image drum cartridge.
Ready To Print	The printer is ready to operate.	-

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures
Inverter is Removed	An unconnected inverter part of a finisher unit and a printer.	Connect an inverter part of a finisher unit and a printer.
Install Inverter	An unconnected inverter part of a finisher and a printer.	Connect an inverter part of a finisher and a printer.
Check Inverter Paper Jam	A paper jam occurs around an inverter.	Take an inverter away from a printer and remove a paper jam.
Check Inverter Paper Remain	Paper is remains around an inverter of a finisher.	Take an inverter away from a printer and remove the remaining paper.
Print Error Log	A "LOG IN ERROR" is in printing.	Wait for a while.
Offline	The printer is off-line. Data reception is not available.	Press the ON-LINE button for data reception to show "READY TO PRINT"on the panel.
Open Cover Paper Jam COVER	A paper remains around a displayed cover.	Open a cover and remove the remain- ing paper.
Open Cover Paper Remain COVER	A paper jam occurs around a displayed cover.	Open a cover and remove a paper jam.
Open Cover Paper Jam Top Cover	A paper jam occurs in a printer.	Open a top cover and remove a paper jam.
Close Cover COVER	A displayed cover is open. Close a displayed cover.	Close a displayed cover.
Paper Jam	A paper jam occurs.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions to remove a paper jam.
Color Adjusting	A color adjustment is in process.	Wait for a while.
Invalid ID. Job Rejected	A data of unauthorized users is deleted.	An user registration on a Job Account- ing is necessary for printing.
Copy kkk/III	"k" copies of "I" copies are being printed.	Wait for a while.
Rebooting <n></n>	The printer is in restarting.	Wait for a while.
Service Call nnn:Fatal Error PC:nnnnnnn LR:nnnnnnn FR:nnnnnnn	An error occurs . Contact with a customer center.	Contact with a customer center and let them know the error number (nnn).
Cyan Toner Not Installed	A cyan toner cartridge is not installed in a printer or an unrecognized cyan toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine cyan toner cartridge.
Non Genuine Cyan Toner	An unrecognized cyan toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine cyan toner cartridge.
Cyan Toner Empty	A cyan toner cartridge runs out or a genuine cyan toner car- tridge is not installed.	Install a new genuine cyan toner cartridge.
Cyan Toner Low	The printer runs out of a cyan toner soon.	Prepare a new cyan toner cartridge but unnecessary to change.
Cyan Toner Sensor Error	An censor error of the cyan toner occurs.	Remove a cyan toner cartridge and re- install it. Contact with a customer center if an error still remains.
Cyan Image Drum Near Life	A life of the image drum is about to end.	Prepare a new cyan image drum cartridge but unnecessary to change.

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures
Cyan Image Drum Life	It is time to change a cyan image drum.	Change to a new cyan image drum cartridge.
Wait a Moment	Wait for a while.	Wait for a while.
Turn off power or press RESTART button	Restart a printer by either turning off the power or pressing the SHUTDOWN /RESTART button.	Restart a printer by either turning off the power or pressing the SHUTDOWN /RESTART button.
Shutting down	The printer is in the shutdown process.	Wait for a while.
Statistics Log Buffer is Full	A memory space of an internal hard disk for saving the number of logs is not available.	Increase a memory space of a hard disk by deleting unnecessary parts. Press the ON-LINE switch to delete a displayed error.
Statistics Log Buffer is Not Available	A memory space of an internal hard disk for saving the number of logs is not available.	Install an internal hard disk (option).
Paper Multi Feed TRAY	Overlapped paper are fed.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.
Job Offset Home Error	An offset printing is not available due to an occurance of the JOB OFFSET function error.	The offset function is unavailable but printing is available. Contact with a customer center if an error still remains.
Power Save	The printer is in the ENERGY SAVING MODE.	The ENERGY SAVING MODE will be canceled if printing starts.
Processing	The printer is in data processing.	Wait for a while.
Open Stacker Face Up Stacker	Paper can not be fed due to a closed face-up stacker.	Open a face-up stacker.
Checking Sectors	A sector of a hard disk is in checking.	Wait for a while.
Download Error	Download error. Restart a printer.	Re-start a printer.
Incompatible Toner CCCC	Either a toner cartridge from other companies is installed or a correct toner cartridge has not been installed.	Install a correct CCCC toner cartridge.
Collate Copy iii/jjj	A collated printing is in process. "I" copies of "j " copies are being printed.	_
Collate Fail:Too Many Pages	Printing is not available because a lack of memory space occurs during a collated printing.	Either install an extension memory or reduce the number of specified pages.
Adjusting Temp	A fusing temperature is in adjusting.	Wait for a while.
Fuser Unit Near Life	A life of fuser unit is about to end.	Prepare a new fuser unit but unneces- sary to change.
Check Fuser Unit	A fuser unit is installed uncollectly. Reinstall it.	Reinstall it correctly.
Change Fuser Unit	It is time to change a fuser unit due to a life end of it.	Change to a new fuser unit.
Fuser Unit Life	It is time to change a fuser unit due to a life end of a fuser unit.	Change to a new fuser unit.
Data Present	There is an unprinted data.	Check out a data.
Check Data	An error occurs during a reception of a program data.	Check out a data.

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures
Check Data Program Data Write Error	An error of writing data occurs.	Check out a data.
Check Data Program Data Receive Error <nnn>"</nnn>	An error occurs during a reception of data.	Check out a data.
Cancelling Job	A data is in deleting	Wait for a while.
Data Arrive	A data is in receiving.	Wait for a while.
Print Demo Page	A DEMO page is in printing.	Wait for a while.
Power Off and Wait for a while 126:Condensing Error	Condensation of a printeer occurs. Turn off the power and wait for a while	Turn off the power and wait for a while.
Toner Not Installed CCCC	A CCCC toner cartridge is not installed or an unrecognized CCCC toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine CCCC toner cartridge.
Non Genuine Toner CCCC	An unrecognized CCCC toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine CCCC toner cartridge.
Check Toner Cartridge Improper Lock Lever Position CCCC	A toner cartridge is unlocked.	Check out a lever of a toner cartridge.
Install Toner CCCC	Either a displayed toner cartridge runs out or a genuine displayed toner cartridge is not installed.	Install a displayed genuine toner cartridge.
Reset Drum Basket	An eroor occurs during transfer- ring of a disposal toner.	Open a top cover and reinstall a drum basket.
Reset Drum Basket Waste Toner Transfer Error	An eroor occurs during transfer- ring of a disposal toner.	Open a top cover and reinstall a drum basket.
TRAY n Overfilled	Too much paper are set in a tray n.	Reduce the number of paper.
Change Paper in TRAY n MEDIA_SIZE MEDIA_TYPE Please see HELP for details	Paper loaded into a tray is different from the specified one.	Press the ONLINE button after loading a correct paper into a specified tray.
TRAY n Lift Up Error	Paper can not be fed from a tray n.	Place paper into a tray n correctly.
Printing(TRAY n)	A paper printing on a tray n is in process.	
TRAY n Empty	No paper in a tray n.	Place paper into a tray n.
TRAY n Overfilled	Too much paper in a tray n.	Reduce the number of paper.
TRAY n Near End	The number of a paper in a tray n is about to end.	Prepare the spcified paper on a tray n.
Reset Tray TRAY	Feeding paper from a displayed tray is not available. Reinstall a tray.	Reinstall a tray.
Install Tray TRAY	A displayed tray is installed uncorrectly. Reinstall it.	Reinstall a tray.
Network Error	A network error occurs.	Restart a printer.
Print Network Config	Printing a network setup is in process.	Wait for a while.
Network Initializing	A network setup is in initializing.	Wait for a while.
Network Configuration Writing	A network setup is in saving.	Wait for a while.

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures
Density Adjusting	Correction of density is in process.	Wait for a while.
Waste Toner Transfer Error	An eroor occurs during transfer- ring of a disposal toner.	Open a top cover and reinstall a drum basket.
Waste Toner Near Full	A life of a disposal toner box is about to end.	Prepare a new disposal toner box but unnecessary to change.
Check Waste Toner Box	A disposal toner box is installed uncollectly. Reinstall it.	Reinstall a disposal toner box.
Waste Toner Full	A disposal toner box is full. Change to a new one.	Change to a new disposal toner box.
Centro I/F Error	A parallel I/F error occurs.	Press the ONLINE button.
Staple Jam	A staple is jammed in a stapler unit of a finisher.	Remove a staple.
Check Punch Chip Box	Either a punch dust box is full or not installed.	Either clear out a box or reinstall it.
File Accessing	The printer is in access to a file of an internal hard disk.	Wait for a while.
File System Operation failed <nnn></nnn>	An error occurs while a printer is in access to a file of an internal hard disk.	Normal printing is available. Contact with a customer center if an error still remains.
File System is Full	A space of a hard disk (option) or flash memory runs out.	Normal printing is available.
File System is Write Protected	An invalid writing on a hard disk (option) or a flash memory.	Normal printing is available.
Checking File System	Checking a file system is in process.	Wait for a while.
Print File List	Printing a file list is in process.	Wait for a while.
Install Finisher	A finisher is away from an inverter. Connect a finisher into a inverter.	Connect a finisher into a inverter.
Check Finisher Staple Jam	A staple is jammed in a stapler unit of a finisher. Remove it.	Remove a jammed staple.
Check Finisher Paper Jam	A paper jam occurs aroud a finisher.	Keep a finisher away from a inverter and remove the remaining papers.
Check Finisher Paper Remain	A sheet of paper remains aroud a finisher.	Wait for a while.
Print Font	Printing a font list is in process.	Wait for a while.
Press ONLINE Button for Restoration	Press the ONLINE button for recovery.	Press the ONLINE button.
Black Toner Not Installed	A black toner cartridge is not installed in a printer or an unrecognized black toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine black toner cartridge.
Non Genuine Black Toner	An unrecognized black toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine black toner cartridge.
Black Toner Empty	A black toner runs out or a genuine black toner cartridge is not installed.	Install a new genuine black toner cartridge.
Black Toner Low	The printer runs out of a black toner soon.	Prepare a new black toner cartridge but unnecessary to change.

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures
Black Toner Sensor Error	A censor error of the black toner occurs.	Remove a black toner cartridge and re- install it. Contact with a customer center if an error still remains.
Black Image Drum Near Life	A life of the image drum is about to end.	Prepare a new black image drum cartridge but unnecessary to change.
Black Image Drum Life	It is time to change a black image drum.	Change to a new black image drum cartridge.
Condensing Error	Condensation occurs in a printer.	Turn off the power and wait for a while.
Power Off/On	Restart a printer.	Turn off the power again.
Power Off/On nnn:Error	Restart a printer due to an occurance of an error.	Turn off the power again.
Program Update Mode	The printer is in the program update mode. (Printing is not available).	_
Program Data Received OK	A completion of program data reception.	Wait for a while.
Program Data Written OK	A completion of program data writing.	Restart a printer.
Program Data Receive Error <nnn></nnn>	An error occurs while a reception of program data.	Check out a data.
Program Data Receiving	The printer is receiving the program data.	Wait for a while.
Program Data Write Error <nnn></nnn>	An error occurs during a reception of program data.	Check out a data.
Program Data Writing	Writing a program data is in process.	Wait for a while.
Belt Unit Near Life	A life of a belt unit is about to end.	Prepare a new belt unit but unneces- sary to change.
Check Belt Unit	A belt unit is installed incorrectly. Reinstall it.	Re-install a belt unit.
Change Belt Unit	It is time to change a belt unit due to a life end of it.	Change to a new belt unit.
Install New Belt Unit Belt Unit Life	It is time to change a belt unit due to a life end of it.	Change to a new belt unit.
Belt Unit Life	It is time to change a belt unit due to a life end of it.	Change to a new belt unit.
Error Postscript	An error occurs while printing is in process using a PS driver.	Check out a printing data.
No Staple	A finisher unit is out of staples.	Reinstall a staple in a finisher unit.
Could Not Staple. No Staple	It is unable to staple because of no staple.	Set staples. Press the ONLINE button to clear out a displayed error.
Magenta Toner Not Installed	A magenta toner cartridge is not installed in a printer or an unrecognized magenta toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine magenta toner cartridge.
Non Genuine Magenta Toner	An unrecognized magenta toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine magenta toner cartridge.
Magenta Toner Empty	A magenta toner runs out or a genuine magenta toner cartridge is not installed.	Install a new genuine magenta toner cartridge.

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures
Magenta Toner Low	The printer runs out of a ma- genta toner soon.	Prepare a new magenta toner cartridge but unnecessary to change.
Magenta Toner Sensor Error	A censor error of the magenta toner occurs.	Remove a magenta toner cartridge and re-install it. Contact with a customer center if an error still remains.
Magenta Image Drum Near Life	A life of the image drum is about to end.	Prepare a new magenta image drum cartridge but unnecessary to change.
Magenta Image Drum Life	It is time to change a magenta image drum due to a life end of it.	Change to a new magenta image drum cartridge.
MPTray Lift Up Error	Paper can not be fed from a multi-purpose tray.	Place paper into a multi-purpose tray correctly.
Printing(MPTray)	Paper is fed from a multi- purpose tray and being printed.	_
MPTray Empty	No paper on a multi-purpose tray.	Place a sheet of paper onto a multi- purpose tray.
MPTray Overfilled	Too much paper on a multi- purpose tray.	Reduce the number of paper.
MPTray Near End	Paper on a multi-purpose tray is about to run out.	Prepare the spcified paper on a multi- purpose tray.
Change Paper in MPTray MEDIA_SIZE MEDIA_TYPE Press ONLINE Button Please see HELP for details	Paper loaded onto a multi- purpose tray is different from the specified one.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.
Memory Overflow	Lack of memory space occurs.	Press the ONLINE button. Either increase a memory space or make a printing data simple.
Print Configuration	The printer is in printing a set-up value.	Wait for a while.
Please see HELP for details	Pressing the HELP button leads to a solution for clearing out an error.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.
Invalid Data	An invalid data is received.	Press the ONLINE button.
Remove Excess Paper TRAY	Reduce the number of paper loaded onto a displayed tray.	Reduce the number of paper loaded onto a displayed tray.
Remove Excess Paper MPTray	Reduce the number of paper loaded onto a multi-purpose tray.	Reduce the number of paper loaded onto a multi-purpose tray.
Could Not Staple/Punch. Paper Too Thick	Unable to staple due to thick- paper.	Press the ONLINE button to clear out an error.
Could Not Duplex. Paper Too Thick	The printer is unable to duplex- print due to thick-paper.	Press the ONLINE button to clear out an error.
Could Not Staple. Too Much Paper	Unable to staple due to too much paper.	Press the ONLINE button to clear out an error.
Paper Remain TRAY	A paper remains around a displayed cover.	Open a displayed cover and remove the remaining paper.
Paper Size Error TRAY	Different size of paper are fed from a displayed tray. Open and close a top cover to clear out an error.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures
Reset Paper MPTray	A sheet of paper is not fed from a multi-purpose tray. Reload a sheet of paper.	Reload a sheet of paper.
Check Paper	A different paper is Loaded.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.
Remove Paper STACKER	Remove a printed paper left on a displayed stacker.	Remove a printed paper left on a displayed stacker.
Remove Paper STACKER	Remove a printed paper left on a displayed finisher.	Remove a printed paper left on a displayed stacker of finisher.
Install Paper TRAY MEDIA_SIZE	Paper on a displayed tray runs out.	Load paper on a displayed tray.
Install Paper MPTray MEDIA_SIZE	No paper on a multi-purpose tray. Load a sheet of paper on a displayed tray.	Load a sheet of paper on a multi- purpose tray.
Install Paper MPTray MEDIA_SIZE Press ONLINE Button	Manual feed printing of the multi-purpose tray is in process.	Load a sheet of paper on a multi- purpose tray and press the ONLINE button to start printing.
Paper Thick Error TRAY	Different thickness of paper is detected on a displayed tray.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.
Paper Thick Error TRAY	Different thickness of paper is detected on a displayed tray.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.
Non Paper Sense Error	A censor error of the paper- thickness occurs.	If an error still remains after printing a couple of pages, set a MEDIA WEIGHT of a MENU to other than "AUTOMATIC" or contact with a customer center.
Paper Sense Error	Paper other than a specified thickness is detected.	If an error still remains after printing some, set up MEDIA WEIGHT of MENU other than "AUTOMATIC" or contact with a customer center.
Media Weight Detecting	The printer is checking for thickness.	Wait for a while.
Press RESTART button	The printer will restart after pressing the RESTART button.	Press the RESTART button to start a printer.
Log Buffer is Full. Job Rejected	A data is deleted because a log buffer is full.	Delete an unnecessary data of hard disk (option) to have more space. Press the ONLINE button to clear out an error.
Improper Lock Lever Position CCCC	A displayed lock lever of a toner cartridge is located incorrectly.	Locate a lock lever of toner cartridge correctly.
Improper Lock Lever Position	A toner cartridge is unlocked.	Check out a lever of toner cartridge.
Check Duplex Unit Paper Jam	A paper jam occurs aroud a duplex-printer unit.	Open a cover of duplex-printer unit and remove a paper jam.
Check Duplex Unit Paper Remain	Paper still remains aroud a duplex-printer unit.	Open a cover of duplex-printer unit and remove a paper jam.
Install Duplex Unit	A duplex-printer unit is not installed.	Install a duplex-printer unit correctly.

## 9.2 Message Chart of C9800

Take appropriet actions for messages provided on the control panel of your printer. In the table, "CCCC" shows the toner color (cyan, magenta, yellow or black).

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures
126:Condensing Error	Condensation occurs in a printer.	Turn off the power and wait for a while.
Download Error	Download error.	Re-start a printer.
Communication Error	A communication error occurs.	Contact with a customer center.
EEPROM Reset	EEPROM is in resetting.	Wait for a while.
Initializing	The printer is in initializing.	Wait for a while.
NON OEM %COLOR% TONER DETECTED	A genuine CCCC toner cartridge is not installed.	Possible to operate even if a toner cartridge other than genuine CCCC is used.
PS Memory Overflow	Lack of a memory space while printing with a PS driver.	Either increase memory space or make a print data simple.
PU Flash Error	A communication error occurs.	Contact with a customer center
RAM Check nnn%	RAM checking is in process.	Wait for a while
Restarting	The printer is in restarting.	Wait for a while
USB I/F Error	USB Interface error.	Press the ON Line button to clear out an error.
Check Image Drum CCCC	A displayed image drum car- tridge is not installed correctly.	Re-install a displlayed image drum cartridge.
Yellow Toner Not Installed	A yellow toner cartridge is not installed in a printer or an unrecognized yellow toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine yellow toner cartridge.
Non Genuine Yellow Toner	An unrecognized yellow toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine yellow toner cartridge.
Yellow Toner Empty	A yellow toner cartridge runs out or a genuine yellow toner cartridge is not installed.	Install a new genuine yellow toner cartridge.
Yellow Toner Low	The printer runs out of a yellow toner soon.	Prepare a new yellow toner cartridge but unnecessary to change.
Yellow Toner Sensor Error	A censor error of the yellow toner occurs.	Remove a yellow toner cartridge and re-install it.
Yellow Image Drum Near Life	A life of the image drum is about to end.	Prepare a new yellow image drum cartridge but unnecessary to change.
Yellow Image Drum Life	It is time to change a yellow image drum.	Change to a new yellow image drum cartridge.
Initializing	The printer is in initializing.	Wait for a while.
Install New Image Drum Image Drum Life CCCC	It is time to change a displayed drum cartridge.	Change to a new image drum cartridge.
Image Drum Life CCCC	It is time to change a displayed drum cartridge.	Change to a new image drum cartridge.
Ready To Print	The printer is ready to operate.	
Inverter is Removed	An unconnected inverter part of a finisher unit and a printer.	Connect an inverter part of a finisher unit and a printer.

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures
Install Inverter	An unconnected inverter part of a finisher and a printer.	Connect an inverter part of a finisher and a printer.
Check Inverter Paper Jam	A paper jam occurs around an inverter.	Take an inverter away from a printer and remove a paper jam.
Check Inverter Paper Remain	Paper is remains around an inverter of a finisher.	Take an inverter away from a printer and remove the remaining paper.
Print Error Log	A "LOG IN ERROR" is in printing.	Wait for a while.
Offline	The printer is off-line. Data reception is not available.	Press the ON-LINE button for data reception to show "READY TO PRINT"on the panel.
Open Cover Paper Jam COVER	A paper remains around a displayed cover.	Open a cover and remove the remain- ing paper.
Open Cover Paper Remain COVER	A paper jam occurs around a displayed cover.	Open a cover and remove a paper jam.
Open Cover Paper Jam Top Cover	A paper jam occurs in a printer.	Open a top cover and remove a paper jam.
Close Cover COVER	A displayed cover is open. Close a displayed cover.	Close a displayed cover.
Paper Jam	A paper jam occurs.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions to remove a paper jam.
Color Adjusting	A color adjustment is in process.	Wait for a while.
Invalid ID. Job Rejected	A data of unauthorized users is deleted.	An user registration on a Job Account- ing is necessary for printing.
Copy kkk/III	"k" copies of "I" copies are being printed.	Wait for a while.
Rebooting <n></n>	The printer is in restarting.	Wait for a while.
Service Call nnn:Fatal Error PC:nnnnnnn LR:nnnnnnn FR:nnnnnnn	An error occurs . Contact with a customer center.	Contact with a customer center and let them know the error number (nnn).
Cyan Toner Not Installed	A cyan toner cartridge is not installed in a printer or an unrecognized cyan toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine cyan toner cartridge.
Non Genuine Cyan Toner	An unrecognized cyan toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine cyan toner cartridge.
Cyan Toner Empty	A cyan toner cartridge runs out or a genuine cyan toner car- tridge is not installed.	Install a new genuine cyan toner cartridge.
Cyan Toner Low	The printer runs out of a cyan toner soon.	Prepare a new cyan toner cartridge but unnecessary to change.
Cyan Toner Sensor Error	An censor error of the cyan toner occurs.	Remove a cyan toner cartridge and re- install it.
Cyan Image Drum Near Life	A life of the image drum is about to end.	Prepare a new cyan image drum cartridge but unnecessary to change.
Cyan Image Drum Life	It is time to change a cyan image drum.	Change to a new cyan image drum cartridge.

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures
Wait a Moment	Wait for a while.	Wait for a while.
Turn off power or press RESTART button	Restart a printer by either turning off the power or pressing the SHUTDOWN /RESTART button.	Restart a printer by either turning off the power or pressing the SHUTDOWN /RESTART button.
Shutting down	The printer is in the shutdown process.	Wait for a while.
Statistics Log Buffer is Full	A memory space of an internal hard disk for saving the number of logs is not available.	Increase a memory space of a hard disk by deleting unnecessary parts. Press the ON-LINE switch to delete a displayed error.
Statistics Log Buffer is Not Available	A memory space of an internal hard disk for saving the number of logs is not available.	Install an internal hard disk (option).
Paper Multi Feed TRAY	Overlapped paper are fed.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.
Job Offset Home Error	An offset printing is not available due to an occurance of the JOB OFFSET function error.	The offset function is unavailable but printing is available. Contact with a customer center if an error still remains.
Power Save	The printer is in the ENERGY SAVING MODE.	The ENERGY SAVING MODE will be canceled if printing starts.
Processing	The printer is in data processing.	Wait for a while.
Open Stacker Face Up Stacker	Paper can not be fed due to a closed face-up stacker.	Open a face-up stacker.
Checking Sectors	A sector of a hard disk is in checking.	Wait for a while.
Download Error	Download error. Restart a printer.	Re-start a printer.
Incompatible Toner CCCC	Either a toner cartridge from other companies is installed or a correct toner cartridge has not been installed.	Install a correct CCCC toner cartridge.
Collate Copy iii/jjj	A collated printing is in process. "I" copies of "j " copies are being printed.	_
Collate Fail:Too Many Pages	Printing is not available because a lack of memory space occurs during a collated printing.	Either install an extension memory or reduce the number of specified pages.
Adjusting Temp	A fusing temperature is in adjusting.	Wait for a while.
Fuser Unit Near Life	A life of fuser unit is about to end.	Prepare a new fuser unit but unneces- sary to change.
Check Fuser Unit	A fuser unit is installed uncollectly. Reinstall it.	Reinstall it correctly.
Change Fuser Unit	It is time to change a fuser unit due to a life end of it.	Change to a new fuser unit.
Fuser Unit Life	It is time to change a fuser unit due to a life end of a fuser unit.	Change to a new fuser unit.
Data Present	There is an unprinted data.	Check out a data.
Check Data	An error occurs during a reception of a program data.	Check out a data.
Check Data Program Data Write Error	An error of writing data occurs.	Check out a data.

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures	
Check Data Program Data Receive Error <nnn>"</nnn>	An error occurs during a reception of data.	Check out a data.	
Cancelling Job	A data is in deleting	Wait for a while.	
Data Arrive	A data is in receiving.	Wait for a while.	
Print Demo Page	A DEMO page is in printing.	Wait for a while.	
Power Off and Wait for a while 126:Condensing Error	Condensation of a printeer occurs. Turn off the power and wait for a while	Turn off the power and wait for a while.	
Toner Not Installed CCCC	A CCCC toner cartridge is not installed or an unrecognized CCCC toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine CCCC toner cartridge.	
Non Genuine Toner CCCC	An unrecognized CCCC toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine CCCC toner cartridge.	
Check Toner Cartridge Improper Lock Lever Position CCCC	A toner cartridge is unlocked.	Check out a lever of a toner cartridge.	
Install Toner CCCC	Either a displayed toner cartridge runs out or a genuine displayed toner cartridge is not installed.	Install a displayed genuine toner cartridge.	
Reset Drum Basket	An eroor occurs during transfer- ring of a disposal toner.	Open a top cover and reinstall a drum basket.	
Reset Drum Basket Waste Toner Transfer Error	An eroor occurs during transfer- ring of a disposal toner.	Open a top cover and reinstall a drum basket.	
TRAY n Overfilled	Too much paper are set in a tray n.	Reduce the number of paper.	
Change Paper in TRAY n MEDIA_SIZE MEDIA_TYPE Please see HELP for details	Paper loaded into a tray is different from the specified one.	Press the ONLINE button after loading a correct paper into a specified tray.	
TRAY n Lift Up Error	Paper can not be fed from a tray n.	Place paper into a tray n correctly.	
Printing(TRAY n)	A paper printing on a tray n is in process.	-	
TRAY n Empty	No paper in a tray n.	Place paper into a tray n.	
TRAY n Overfilled	Too much paper in a tray n.	Reduce the number of paper.	
TRAY n Near End	The number of a paper in a tray n is about to end.	Prepare the spcified paper on a tray n.	
Reset Tray TRAY	Feeding paper from a displayed tray is not available. Reinstall a tray.	Reinstall a tray.	
Install Tray TRAY	A displayed tray is installed uncorrectly. Reinstall it.	Reinstall a tray.	
Network Error	A network error occurs.	Restart a printer.	
Print Network Config	Printing a network setup is in process.	Wait for a while.	
Network Initializing	A network setup is in initializing.	Wait for a while.	
Network Configuration Writing	A network setup is in saving.	Wait for a while.	
Density Adjusting	Correction of density is in process.	Wait for a while.	

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures	
Waste Toner Transfer Error	An eroor occurs during transfer- ring of a disposal toner.	Open a top cover and reinstall a drum basket.	
Waste Toner Near Full	A life of a disposal toner box is about to end.	Prepare a new disposal toner box but unnecessary to change.	
Check Waste Toner Box	A disposal toner box is installed uncollectly. Reinstall it.	Reinstall a disposal toner box.	
Waste Toner Full	A disposal toner box is full. Change to a new one.	Change to a new disposal toner box.	
Centro I/F Error	A parallel I/F error occurs.	Press the ONLINE button.	
Staple Jam	A staple is jammed in a stapler unit of a finisher.	Remove a staple.	
Check Punch Chip Box	Either a punch dust box is full or not installed.	Either clear out a box or reinstall it.	
File Accessing	The printer is in access to a file of an internal hard disk.	Wait for a while.	
File System Operation failed <nnn></nnn>	An error occurs while a printer is in access to a file of an internal hard disk.	Normal printing is available. Contact with a customer center if an error still remains.	
File System is Full	A space of a hard disk (option) or flash memory runs out.	Normal printing is available.	
File System is Write Protected	An invalid writing on a hard disk (option) or a flash memory.	Normal printing is available.	
Checking File System	Checking a file system is in process.	Wait for a while.	
Print File List	Printing a file list is in process.	Wait for a while.	
Install Finisher	A finisher is away from an inverter. Connect a finisher into a inverter.	Connect a finisher into a inverter.	
Check Finisher Staple Jam	A staple is jammed in a stapler unit of a finisher. Remove it.	Remove a jammed staple.	
Check Finisher Paper Jam	A paper jam occurs aroud a finisher.	Keep a finisher away from a inverter and remove the remaining papers.	
Check Finisher Paper Remain	A sheet of paper remains aroud a finisher.	Wait for a while.	
Print Font	Printing a font list is in process.	Wait for a while.	
Press ONLINE Button for Restoration	Press the ONLINE button for recovery.	Press the ONLINE button.	
Black Toner Not Installed	A black toner cartridge is not installed in a printer or an unrecognized black toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine black toner cartridge.	
Non Genuine Black Toner	An unrecognized black toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine black toner cartridge.	
Black Toner Empty	A black toner runs out or a genuine black toner cartridge is not installed.	Install a new genuine black toner cartridge.	
Black Toner Low	The printer runs out of a black toner soon.	Prepare a new black toner cartridge but unnecessary to change.	
Black Toner Sensor Error	A censor error of the black toner occurs.	Remove a black toner cartridge and re- install it.	

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures	
Black Image Drum Near Life	A life of the image drum is about to end.	Prepare a new black image drum cartridge but unnecessary to change.	
Black Image Drum Life	It is time to change a black image drum.	Change to a new black image drum cartridge.	
Condensing Error	Condensation occurs in a printer.	Turn off the power and wait for a while.	
Power Off/On	Restart a printer.	Turn off the power again.	
Power Off/On nnn:Error	Restart a printer due to an occurance of an error.	Turn off the power again.	
Program Update Mode	The printer is in the program update mode. (Printing is not available).	_	
Program Data Received OK	A completion of program data reception.	Wait for a while.	
Program Data Written OK	A completion of program data writing.	Restart a printer.	
Program Data Receive Error <nnn></nnn>	An error occurs while a recep- tion of program data.	Check out a data.	
Program Data Receiving	The printer is receiving the program data.	Wait for a while.	
Program Data Write Error <nnn></nnn>	An error occurs during a reception of program data.	Check out a data.	
Program Data Writing	Writing a program data is in process.	Wait for a while.	
Belt Unit Near Life	A life of a belt unit is about to end.	Prepare a new belt unit but unneces- sary to change.	
Check Belt Unit	A belt unit is installed incorrectly. Reinstall it.	Re-install a belt unit.	
Change Belt Unit	It is time to change a belt unit due to a life end of it.	Change to a new belt unit.	
Install New Belt Unit Belt Unit Life	It is time to change a belt unit due to a life end of it.	Change to a new belt unit.	
Belt Unit Life	It is time to change a belt unit due to a life end of it.	Change to a new belt unit.	
Error Postscript	An error occurs while printing is in process using a PS driver.	Check out a printing data.	
No Staple	A finisher unit is out of staples.	Reinstall a staple in a finisher unit.	
Could Not Staple. No Staple	It is unable to staple because of no staple.	Set staples. Press the ONLINE button to clear out a displayed error.	
Magenta Toner Not Installed	A magenta toner cartridge is not installed in a printer or an unrecognized magenta toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine magenta toner cartridge.	
Non Genuine Magenta Toner	An unrecognized magenta toner cartridge is installed.	Install a genuine magenta toner cartridge.	
Magenta Toner Empty	A magenta toner runs out or a genuine magenta toner cartridge is not installed.	Install a new genuine magenta toner cartridge.	
Magenta Toner Low	The printer runs out of a ma- genta toner soon.	Prepare a new magenta toner cartridge but unnecessary to change.	

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures	
Magenta Toner Sensor Error	A censor error of the magenta toner occurs.	Remove a magenta toner cartridge and re-install it.	
Magenta Image Drum Near Life	A life of the image drum is about to end.	Prepare a new magenta image drum cartridge but unnecessary to change.	
Magenta Image Drum Life	It is time to change a magenta image drum due to a life end of it.	Change to a new magenta image drum cartridge.	
MPTray Lift Up Error	Paper can not be fed from a multi-purpose tray.	Place paper into a multi-purpose tray correctly.	
Printing(MPTray)	Paper is fed from a multi- purpose tray and being printed.	-	
MPTray Empty	No paper on a multi-purpose tray.	Place a sheet of paper onto a multi- purpose tray.	
MPTray Overfilled	Too much paper on a multi- purpose tray.	Reduce the number of paper.	
MPTray Near End	Paper on a multi-purpose tray is about to run out.	Prepare the spcified paper on a multi- purpose tray.	
Change Paper in MPTray MEDIA_SIZE MEDIA_TYPE Press ONLINE Button Please see HELP for details	Paper loaded onto a multi- purpose tray is different from the specified one.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.	
Memory Overflow	Lack of memory space occurs.	Press the ONLINE button. Either increase a memory space or make a printing data simple.	
Print Configuration	The printer is in printing a set-up value.	Wait for a while.	
Please see HELP for details	Pressing the HELP button leads to a solution for clearing out an error.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.	
Invalid Data	An invalid data is received.	Press the ONLINE button.	
Remove Excess Paper TRAY	Reduce the number of paper loaded onto a displayed tray.	Reduce the number of paper loaded onto a displayed tray.	
Remove Excess Paper MPTray	Reduce the number of paper loaded onto a multi-purpose tray.	Reduce the number of paper loaded onto a multi-purpose tray.	
Could Not Staple/Punch. Paper Too Thick	Unable to staple due to thick- paper.	Press the ONLINE button to clear out an error.	
Could Not Duplex. Paper Too Thick	The printer is unable to duplex- print due to thick-paper.	Press the ONLINE button to clear out an error.	
Could Not Staple. Too Much Paper	Unable to staple due to too much paper.	Press the ONLINE button to clear out an error.	
Paper Remain TRAY	A paper remains around a displayed cover.	Open a displayed cover and remove the remaining paper.	
Paper Size Error TRAY	Different size of paper are fed from a displayed tray. Open and close a top cover to clear out an error.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.	
Reset Paper MPTray	A sheet of paper is not fed from a multi-purpose tray. Reload a sheet of paper.	Reload a sheet of paper.	

Display on Operating Panel	Meaning	Measures	
Check Paper	A different paper is Loaded.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.	
Remove Paper STACKER	Remove a printed paper left on a displayed stacker.	Remove a printed paper left on a displayed stacker.	
Remove Paper STACKER	Remove a printed paper left on a displayed finisher.	Remove a printed paper left on a displayed stacker of finisher.	
Install Paper TRAY MEDIA_SIZE	Paper on a displayed tray runs out.	Load paper on a displayed tray.	
Install Paper MPTray MEDIA_SIZE	No paper on a multi-purpose tray. Load a sheet of paper on a displayed tray.	Load a sheet of paper on a multi- purpose tray.	
Install Paper MPTray MEDIA_SIZE Press ONLINE Button	Manual feed printing of the multi-purpose tray is in process.	Load a sheet of paper on a multi- purpose tray and press the ONLINE button to start printing.	
Paper Thick Error TRAY	Different thickness of paper is detected on a displayed tray.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.	
Paper Thick Error TRAY	Different thickness of paper is detected on a displayed tray.	Press the HELP button and follow the instructions.	
Non Paper Sense Error	A censor error of the paper- thickness occurs.	If an error still remains after printing a couple of pages, set a MEDIA WEIGHT of a MENU to other than "AUTOMATIC" or contact with a customer center.	
Paper Sense Error	Paper other than a specified thickness is detected.	If an error still remains after printing some, set up MEDIA WEIGHT of MENU other than "AUTOMATIC" or contact with a customer center.	
Media Weight Detecting	The printer is checking for thickness.	Wait for a while.	
Press RESTART button	The printer will restart after pressing the RESTART button.	Press the RESTART button to start a printer.	
Improper Lock Lever Position CCCC	A displayed lock lever of a toner cartridge is located incorrectly.	Locate a lock lever of toner cartridge correctly.	
Improper Lock Lever Position	A toner cartridge is unlocked.	Check out a lever of toner cartridge.	
Check Duplex Unit Paper Jam	A paper jam occurs aroud a duplex-printer unit.	Open a cover of duplex-printer unit and remove a paper jam.	
Check Duplex Unit Paper Remain	Paper still remains aroud a duplex-printer unit.	Open a cover of duplex-printer unit and remove a paper jam.	
Install Duplex Unit	A duplex-printer unit is not installed.	Install a duplex-printer unit correctly.	

# 9.3 Illustration appears on the operating panel

When troubles occur, an illustration and message may appear on the operating panel. See the following table for detail instruction.

Front view of printer	Opening the top cover	Side view (left) of printer	Side view (right) of printer
Indicates a cyan toner cartridge.	Indicates a magenta toner cartridge.	Indicates a yellow toner cartridge.	Indicates a black toner cartridge.
Indicates a cyan image drum.	Indicates a magenta image drum.	Indicates a yellow image drum.	Indicates a black image drum.
Indicates a fixation unit.	Indicates a fixation unit.	Indicates a belt unit.	Indicates paper route inside printer
Indicates a disposal toner unit.	Indicates a disposal toner unit.		





Please refer to the "Illustrated Parts Manual" for spare part information.